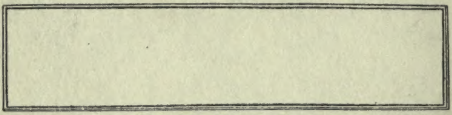


EX LIBRIS
















Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

A CONCISE GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE





green

# A CONCISE GRAMMAR

OF THE

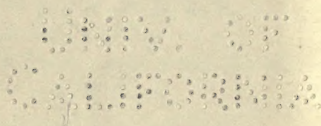
# RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

*Russian Grammar.*

BY

LEONARD A. MAGNUS, LL.B.

*Editor and translator of the "Armament of Igor,"  
"Russian Folk Tales," &c.*



LONDON

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

1916

SERVATION  
Y ADDED  
GINAL TO BE  
AINED

27 1994

~~835  
M/99~~

LONDON :

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

TO THE  
LIBRARY OF THE  
BRITISH MUSEUM

1918



PG 2111  
 M3  
 1916  
 MAIN

# CONTENTS.



	PAGE
Preface . . . . .	xvii
Introduction . . . . .	xix
Alphabet . . . . .	xxi
Russian Script and Italic . . . . .	xxiii
Specimen of Handwriting . . . . .	xxiv
§ 1. The Use and Value of the Letters . . . . .	1
§ 2. The Vowels—	
(1) Hard and Soft Vowels . . . . .	2
(2) а and я . . . . .	2
(3) э, е and ё . . . . .	3
(4) ш, и, і, ү . . . . .	3
(5) о and ө . . . . .	4
(6) у and ю . . . . .	5
(7) ъ and Ъ . . . . .	5
§ 3. The Consonants—Voiced and Unvoiced . . . . .	6
§ 4. General Observations on the Consonants . . . . .	6
§ 5. The Hard and Soft Consonants.—Preliminary . . . . .	8
(1) The Labials п, б, м, в, ф, θ . . . . .	8
(2) The Dentals т, д, н . . . . .	9
(3) The Gutturals к, г, х . . . . .	10
(4) The Sibilants and Compound Conso- nants с, з, ш, ж, щ, ц, ч . . . . .	11
(5) The Liquids л and р . . . . .	13
§ 6. Conglomerated Consonants when Final . . . . .	14
§ 7. Transliteration into Russian . . . . .	14
§ 8. Russian Diphthongs . . . . .	15
§ 9. The Change of е to ө . . . . .	16

## ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. The Parts of Speech . . . . .	19
-------------------------------------	----

## THE NOUN.

§ 11. Preliminary Observations.—The Genders . . . . .	20
§ 12. The Declensions . . . . .	21

	PAGE
§ 13. The Cases . . . . .	22
§ 14. The Numbers . . . . .	23
§ 15. Hard and Soft Nouns . . . . .	24
§ 16. The First Declension—Masculines . . . . .	25
§ 17. The First Declension—Neuters . . . . .	26
§ 18. The Second Declension in а and я . . . . .	28
§ 19. The Third Declension in и and мя—Mascu- lines of the Third Declension—пусть . . . . .	30
§ 20. Feminines of the Third Declension . . . . .	30
§ 21. Neuters in мя of the Third Declension . . . . .	32
§ 22. Remains of Older Forms in the Third Declension—	
(1) мать, дочь . . . . .	32
(2) дитя . . . . .	33
§ 23. Discussion of the Nouns . . . . .	33
§ 24. Remarks on the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive and locative singular in “у” The “u” declension . . . . .	34
(2) Plurals in -ья . . . . .	35
(3) Plurals in -я . . . . .	36
(4) Genitive plural in -ь . . . . .	37
(5) Nominative singular in -инь . . . . .	38
(6) Irregular formations . . . . .	39
§ 25. Accentuation of the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	39
§ 26. Remarks on the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей . . . . .	41
(2) Neuters in -ие and feminines in -ия . . . . .	42
(3) Mixed masculine and neuter declension —nouns in -ище, -ко and others . . . . .	43
(4) Plurals in -ья . . . . .	43
(5) Irregular forms—	
(а) Obsolete, небо, чудо, ята . . . . .	44
(β) Duals . . . . .	45

	PAGE
§ 27. Accentuation of the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	45
§ 28. Remarks on the Second Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей . . . . .	46
(2) Contraction of -ою, -ею to -оѣ, -еѣ . . . . .	47
(3) Masculine nouns in second declension . . . . .	47
(4) Nouns in -ія . . . . .	47
§ 29. Accentuation of Second Declension . . . . .	47
§ 30. Remarks on the Third Declension . . . . .	49
§ 31. Accentuation of the Third Declension . . . . .	49
§ 32. The "Euphonic" Vowels о, е and ѣ—	
I. Extrusion of ѣ and ѣ when unaccented . . . . .	50
II. Insertion of о and е for euphony . . . . .	52
III. What heavy final consonants are allowed . . . . .	54
IV. Remarks on the third declension . . . . .	55

#### THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. Preliminary Observations—	
(1) The syntactical importance of the adjective . . . . .	55
(2) The use of possessive and descriptive adjectives . . . . .	56
(3) No distinction of gender in the plural . . . . .	56
(4) The predicative adjective . . . . .	56
(5) The determinative and simple adjective . . . . .	56
(6) The accentuation of the adjective . . . . .	58
(7) No third declension adjectives . . . . .	58
(8) The unnecessary grammarians' spellings in the determinatives . . . . .	58
(9) The substantival use of adjectives . . . . .	58
§ 34. The Simple, Possessive and Descriptive Adjectives—	
(1) Examples of simple adjectives . . . . .	58
(2) Formation of possessive adjectives and examples . . . . .	59
(3) Formation of descriptive adjectives . . . . .	61



	PAGE
§ 35. The Determinative Adjectives—	
(1) The scheme and formation . . . . .	62
(2) Examples . . . . .	64
§ 36. The Formation of the Predicatives—	
(1) Where no corresponding predicative exists . . . . .	68
(2) Where no corresponding determinative exists . . . . .	68
(3) Possessives . . . . .	68
(4) Instances of accentuation of predica- tives . . . . .	68
§ 37. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Formation—	
(1) Comparative and superlative, how formed . . . . .	70
(2) The superlative . . . . .	70
(3) Substitutes for the superlative . . . . .	71
§ 38. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Rules—	
I. Use of the uninflected form . . . . .	72
II. The four simple inflected superlatives . . . . .	73
III. Adjectives with no determinative com- parative . . . . .	73
IV. Use of prefix <i>но</i> with indeclinable comparative . . . . .	73
V. Translation of “than” . . . . .	74
§ 39. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Examples—	
I. The regular form <i>-ѣе, -ѣйшіи</i> , and accentuation . . . . .	74
II. The shorter form <i>-ѣе, -ѣйшіи</i> . . . . .	74
III. Comparison with words from different roots . . . . .	77

#### THE PRONOUN.

§ 40. (1) Preliminary observations . . . . .	77
(2) Table of Russian pronouns and adverbs . . . . .	78-9

§ 41. Examples of the Pronouns—	
I. The interrogative pronouns . . . . .	80
Remarks on кой, чей, котóрый, скóлько	81
II. The relatives кто, котóрый . . . . .	81
III. The demonstratives тотъ, этóтъ, óный, сей ; remarks on the use of them . . . . .	82
IV. The universals кáждый, весь, всáкий . . . . .	83
V. The personal pronouns and possessives . . . . .	84
(1) Use of свой and себя, ся . . . . .	85
(2) Use of егó, etc., with prepositions . . . . .	85
(3) Instrumental fem. sing. in -ой . . . . .	86
(4) When personal pronouns are used . . . . .	86
VI. The indefinite pronouns . . . . .	86
VII. The negative pronouns. The double negative in Russian . . . . .	87
VIII. The pronouns of identity, and самъ and сáмый . . . . .	87
IX. The pronouns of difference, другóй, ннóй, прóчие . . . . .	88

## THE VERB.

§ 42. (1) Table of Russian Verbs . . . . .	89
(2) Preliminary observations—	
(i) The parts of the Russian verb. . . . .	90
(ii) The deficiencies of the Russian verb and the aspects . . . . .	91
(iii) How the parts are formed . . . . .	92
(iv) Verbs original and derivative . . . . .	92
§ 43. The Russian Infinitive — Consonantal and Vocalic . . . . .	93
§ 44. The forms derived from the Infinitive . . . . .	94
§ 45. The formations from the 1st person sing. Present . . . . .	96
§ 46. The laws of the accentuation of the verbs . . . . .	96

	PAGE
§ 47. Paradigms of желать and верить . . . . .	98
§ 48. The Four Conjugations.—Some Phonetic Rules . . . . .	99
§ 49. The First Conjugation. The Present forms—	
I. Guttural roots, infinitives in -чь . . . . .	100
II. Nasal roots, infinitives in -ять; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . . . .	101
III. Sibilant roots, infinitives in -сті́, -сть . . . . .	103
IV. Liquid roots. (1) Infinitives in -ереть, -елеть; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . . . .	104
(2) Infinitives in -ороть, -олоть . . . . .	104
V. Dental roots, infinitives in -сті́, -сть . . . . .	105
идти́, честь, състь . . . . .	106
Accentuation of past tense . . . . .	107
VI. Roots in в, жить, плыть, слыть . . . . .	107
VII. Consonantal roots with suffixal а in infinitive . . . . .	108
§ 50. The Second Conjugation in-нуть. Preliminary.	
I. "Instantaneous" verbs and their accentuation . . . . .	109
II. "Inchoative" verbs and their accentuation . . . . .	110
III. Examples of conjugation . . . . .	111
§ 51. The Third Conjugation.—Preliminary . . . . .	112
§ 52. The Original Verbs of the Third Conjugation.	
I. Those in which termination is directly to root—	
(1) Liquid roots, олоть, ороть . . . . .	112
(2) Vocalic roots (а) in "а" знать, сіять . . . . .	113
(β) Roots in и, бить, etc., past part. pass. in т . . . . .	113
(γ) Roots in у, дуть, past part. pass. in т . . . . .	113
(δ) Roots in ѣ, смѣть . . . . .	113
(ε) Verbs in ыть and пѣть, past part. pass. in т . . . . .	114
II. Verbs with suffixal infinitive in -ать, -ять, and accentuation . . . . .	115
слать, стлать, дыхать, etc. . . . .	116

	PAGE
§ 53. Derivative Verbs of the Third Conjugation—	
(1) From nouns in -ать, -ять . . . . .	116
(2) Inceptives in -ѣть . . . . .	116
Accentuation of them . . . . .	117
(3) I. Derivatives in -овать, and accentua- tion. Derivatives in -ировать, and accentuation . . . . .	117
II. Original verbs in -овать, -евать . . . . .	118
(4) Iteratives in -áть, -я́ть . . . . .	119
(5) Iteratives in -ыва́ть, -ива́ть . . . . .	119
дава́ть, ставáть, знава́ть . . . . .	120
§ 54. The Fourth Conjugation. Preliminary —	
Infin. in -ѣть, -ить . . . . .	120
§ 55. The Fourth Conjugation. Original Verbs—	
I. In -ать, -ять, гна́ть, сто́ять, спа́ть . . . . .	121
II. In -ѣть, -ать, and accentuation . . . . .	122
Past tense in -ѣлъ . . . . .	123
хотѣ́ть, бѣжа́ть . . . . .	123
Accentuation of original verbs in -ить . . . . .	124
§ 56. The Fourth Conjugation. Derivative Verbs.	
Accentuation and origins . . . . .	125
§ 57. Anomalous Verbs—	
I. Mixed conjugations. The same root throughout. рева́ть, хоте́ть, -де́ть, ста́ть, посѣ́тить, обра́тить, -шибѣ́ть . . . . .	126
II. Using different roots. идти́, бы́ть (and its compounds), ѣ́хать . . . . .	127
III. Obsolete forms. зда́ть, verbs in “м,” вѣ́мъ, есмь, ѣ́сть, да́ть . . . . .	128
§ 58. The Aspects of the Verbs. Preliminary . . . . .	130
Perfective—Imperfective—Abstract—Itera- tive — Instantaneous — Causative — In- ceptive . . . . .	131
Verbs having no perfective . . . . .	132



	PAGE
§ 59. The Formation of the Aspects—	
I. (1) From original verbs . . . . .	133
Monosyllabic roots. Those naturally perfective . . . . .	133
Iteratives in -áть, -вáть . . . . .	134
When compounded . . . . .	134
-честь and -чита́ть . . . . .	135
(2) Second conjugation in -нуть . . . . .	135
The “instantaneous” aspect . . . . .	135
(3) Third conjugation. Prepositions to form perfective . . . . .	135
Iteratives in -ывать, -áть . . . . .	136
двѣгать, дви́гáть, etc. . . . .	137
(4) Fourth conjugation. Original verbs in -ить, -ѣть. Imperfective in -я́ть. Abstract forms in -áть, -я́ть, -и́ть. . . . .	137
When compounded, abstract is imperfective . . . . .	138
Iterative forms in -áть, -я́ть . . . . .	139
Iteratives in -ивать, -ывать . . . . .	140
II. The formation of perfective of derivative verbs . . . . .	140
With prepositions . . . . .	140
III. Aspects formed from a different root. Perfective and imperfective, concrete and abstract . . . . .	141
IV. The aspects of compounded verbs in -ить, -я́ть, -áть, -нуть, -ывать . . . . .	142
V. Causatives and inceptives in -ить and -ѣть	145
VI. По and за as forming depreciatory, or diminutive, and inceptive aspects . . . . .	146
§ 60. Reflexive and Passive Verbs—другъ дру́га . . . . .	147

THE NUMERALS.		PAGE
§ 61.	Preliminary . . . . .	149
§ 62.	I. The numerals 1-10 . . . . .	150
	Declension of <i>о́ба</i> . . . . .	152
	II. The numerals 11-90 . . . . .	152
	III. The numerals 100-1,000,000.— <i>сто</i>	153
	The compound numerals.— <i>ты́сяча</i>	154
	IV. Notes—	
	(1) Frequency . . . . .	155
	(2) Distributives . . . . .	155
	(3) Nought . . . . .	155
	(4) Noun governed by last numeral . . . . .	155
	(5) Decimals . . . . .	156
	(6) Compound ordinals and examples . . . . .	156
	(7) Declension of <i>два</i> with nouns— <i>дво́и</i> , etc. . . . .	157
	(8) Fractions— <i>полови́на</i> , <i>полтора́</i> ; <i>пол-</i> <i>compounds</i> . . . . .	158
	(9) Dates— <i>годъ</i> and <i>лѣто</i> . . . . .	160
§ 63.	THE ADVERBS . . . . .	160
§ 64.	THE PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	161
§ 65.	THE CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	161
§ 66.	THE INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	161

## SYNTAX.

§ 67.	Preliminary—Concord—Order of Words— Predominance of Adjective . . . . .	162
§ 68.	The Article . . . . .	163
§ 69.	The Cases—	
	I. Nominative . . . . .	163
	II. Vocative . . . . .	164
	III. Accusative as object . . . . .	164
	Special uses: duration . . . . .	165

	PAGE
IV. Genitive . . . . .	165
(i) Ownership — Possessive adjectives — Subjective genitive and objective always follows	166
(ii) Partitive . . . . .	170
(iii) In impersonal sentences. . . . .	171
(iv) Replaced by dative . . . . .	171
(v) After comparatives . . . . .	172
(vi) Objective case . . . . .	172
(vii) After certain adjectives and verbs	172
(viii) Dates . . . . .	173
(ix) Partitive sense . . . . .	173
(x) Descriptive . . . . .	173
V. The Dative . . . . .	174
VI. Instrumental . . . . .	175
(1) Agent . . . . .	175
(2) Means . . . . .	175
(3) Predicative . . . . .	176
(4) Manner . . . . .	176
(5) Measurement . . . . .	176
(6) Words of quality . . . . .	177
(7) Time . . . . .	177
(8) After certain verbs . . . . .	177
VII. The Locative. . . . .	177
§ 70. Table of Prepositions and Particles . . . . .	178-9
§ 71. The Prepositions and Particles.—Preliminary	180
§ 72. The Prepositions governing only the Accusative	181
§ 73 (1). The Prepositions governing only the Genitive . . . . .	182
§ 73 (2). The Prepositions governing only the Dative . . . . .	187
§ 74. The Prepositions governing only the Instrumental and между . . . . .	188
§ 75. The Prepositions governing only the Locative	189
§ 76. The Prepositions подъ, предъ and за . . . . .	189
§ 77. The Prepositions въ, о and на . . . . .	193
§ 78. The Prepositions по and съ. . . . .	198
§ 79. The Verbal Prefixes воз, вы, пере, пре, разъ	201
§ 80. The Accentuation of Prepositions and Particles	204

	PAGE
§ 81. The Numerals—	
I. The date, days, months, etc. . . . .	206
II. Age . . . . .	208
III. Adjectives compounded with numerals . . . . .	209
IV. The time of day . . . . .	209
V. Fractions . . . . .	210
VI. Russian money . . . . .	212
VII. Frequencies . . . . .	212
VIII. One cardinal now obsolete . . . . .	213
IX. Cards . . . . .	213
§ 82. The Pronouns—	
I. Interrogative . . . . .	214
II. Relative . . . . .	214
III. Indefinite pronouns. Use of <i>ни</i> . . . . .	215
IV. The reciprocal pronouns . . . . .	216
V. The negative pronouns . . . . .	217
§ 83. The Russian Appellatives—	
I. In conversation — <i>ВЫ, ТЫ, бáрннѣ</i> , patronymics. . . . .	218
II. Between masters and servants . . . . .	220
III. Addressing meetings . . . . .	221
IV. Titles . . . . .	221
V. Addressing letters . . . . .	223
§ 84. Interrogative sentences— <i>ли, рáзвѣ</i> . . . . .	225
§ 85. Negative sentences . . . . .	225
§ 86. The Verb “to be,” omission of “copula” . . . . .	228
§ 87. The Verb “to have” . . . . .	230
§ 88. Special use of Infinitive . . . . .	231
§ 89. The Gerundives and Participles—	
I. The gerundives . . . . .	232
II. The participles—past and present. -мѣнн = -ble. . . . .	232
§ 90. Subordinate Clauses—	
I. Temporal . . . . .	234
II. Causal . . . . .	235
III. Conditional . . . . .	235
IV. Final. (1) Purpose. (2) Effect . . . . .	237
V. Reported Speech . . . . .	238



	PAGE
§ 91. The Imperative. Full forms . . . . .	241
Adverbial, Preterite and Conditional uses— пошелъ . . . . .	241
§ 92. Further illustrations of the Aspects . . . . .	243
§ 93. The Auxiliaries . . . . .	247
давно́, буду́, ста́ну, бу́дто . . . . .	247
то́лько что, быва́ло . . . . .	248
бы́ло, the future perfect . . . . .	249
§ 94. The Impersonal Construction—	
I. Impersonal verbs . . . . .	249
II. Translation of “one” (says) . . . . .	250
III. Impersonal construction of active verbs	250
§ 95. Apocopated forms of some Verbs . . . . .	250
§ 96. The Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	251
Passives, Causatives, Deponents, “Middle” Voice . . . . .	252
§ 97. Russian Relationships . . . . .	253
Table of Kinship . . . . .	258
Table of Affinity . . . . .	259
ETYMOLOGY.—Preliminary.—Accentuation . . . . .	260
§ 98. The Nouns—	
I. Foreign terminations in common use	260
II. Disused or dead suffixes . . . . .	261
III. Patronymics . . . . .	262
IV. Termination to denote the feminine	262
V. Abstract nouns . . . . .	262
VI. Verbal nouns . . . . .	263
VII. The agent or implement . . . . .	264
VIII. Diminutives—	
(1) Masculines of first declension	265
(2) Neuters of first declension . . . . .	265
(3) Feminines and masculines of second declension . . . . .	266
IX. Augmentatives . . . . .	267
X. Miscellaneous . . . . .	267
§ 99. Adjectival Suffixes . . . . .	268
§ 100. Verbal Formations . . . . .	270

## PREFACE.

THE Russian language is becoming daily of increasing importance, both commercially and literarily. It is used over nearly one-seventh of the world, from Petrograd to Vladivostók and in the other Slav States. The literature, popular and cultivated, technical and scientific, published in Russia, must claim the attention of students to the same degree as German has done in the past.

The greatest puzzle in Russian is the accentuation, which governs the pronunciation and inflection, and seems utterly arbitrary. To a large extent it can be scientifically and simply explained, and to this feature the author has devoted especial care.

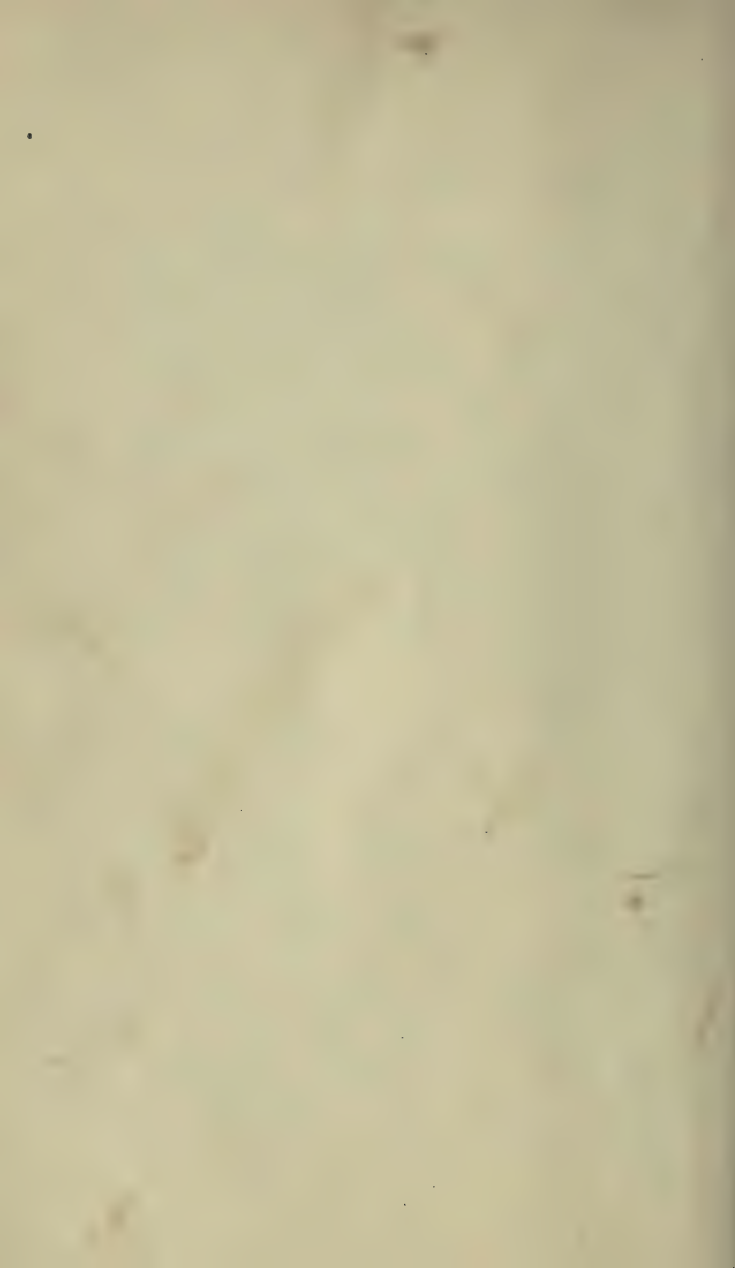
The difficulties of the language cannot be denied; but they have been accentuated by two accidents: first, that all grammars were constructed on a plan merely imitative of Latin; secondly, that they mostly came from Germany, and were framed in accordance with the requirements of the German mind.

It is with the ambition of writing a book on Russian grammar that shall translate Russian into English idiom, and shall proceed on lines more consonant with the genius of Slav speech, that this book has been attempted.

The author wishes to express his obligations to many friends, English and Russian, who have rendered him invaluable assistance, and, in particular, to Mr. Mark Sieff and Mr. J. H. G. Grattan; and to acknowledge his indebtedness to Berneker's Russian studies, and the essays of Professor Boyer (of the Sorbonne).

This grammar, whilst aiming at being practical, is based on historical and philological methods. Explanatory notes on apparent irregularities are added in smaller type, the principal rules being made prominent by italics or otherwise. This grammar should be used in conjunction with one of the progressive readers now being published in England.

L. A. M.



## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE modern Russian language is spoken over the whole extent of the Russian Empire. It originated as the dialect of the Principality of Moscow and the Republic of Nówgorod, and thus at first embraced all the provinces or governments of Russia proper, except Volhynia, Podolia, Poltáva and Southern Russia (where a dialect called Little-Russian is spoken). In Minsk, Gródno and Vílna another dialect is spoken, called White-Russian.

Russian belongs to the Slavonic branch of the Aryan or Indo-European family of languages; other kindred tongues are Polish, Čech or Bohemian, Moravian, Serbian and Bulgarian.

The Slavonic peoples mostly belong to the Orthodox or Eastern Church. They received their alphabet, their civilisation and their ritual from Constantinople, and hence mostly use modernized or adapted forms of the Cyrillic alphabet, which was created by Saint Cyril and Saint Method in the ninth century on the basis of the Greek alphabet.

Those Slav peoples who belong to the Roman confession use the Latin or Roman alphabet, as we do;



but, to provide symbols for the many sounds, very numerous diacritical marks have had to be added, e.g. *a*, *ę*, *é*, *č*, *ž*, *ž*, *ř*, *é*, etc. The Cyrillic alphabet was invented expressly for the Slavonic languages ; and, though the signs are at first strange, they express the sounds more accurately, and, in reality, aid the learner considerably.

The first task of the student of Russian is to familiarise himself with the alphabet, *both* printed and written, so that he may read and write it with ease and promptitude.

---

*In English the vowels a, e, i, o, u have, since Shakspeare's time, been grotesquely diverted from their original value and the general Continental use. The reader must understand that in this Grammar a, e, i, o, u are used as in Italian or German : i.e. ah, cortège, pique, poke, rule ; except where specially stated otherwise.*

## THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

The Russian Alphabet consists of thirty-six letters. Of these there are twelve vowels, а, е, и, ѣ, у, о, ы, ё, э, ю, я; twenty-one consonants, б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѿ; one semi-vowel, ѱ (i *krátkøyi*); and two letters which have no sound-value of their own, Ѣ, Ъ—they influence the softening or hardening of the consonant immediately preceding them.

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.		
Caps. Ord.	Ord.	Caps. Ord.				
А	а	А	а	a (às in <i>ah</i> )	a ( <i>father</i> )	a
Б	б	В	б	be (like English <i>bay</i> )	b	b
В	в	В	в	ve (as in Eng. <i>vale</i> )	v	v
Г	г	Г	г	ge (like English <i>gay</i> )	g*	g
Д	д	Д	д	de (like English <i>day</i> )	d	d
Е	е	Е	е	ye (like English <i>yea</i> )	ye	e or ye
Ж	ж	Ж	ж	zhe (like French <i>jeai</i> )	{ ž (like s in } { <i>leisure</i> ) }	ž
З	з	З	з	ze (like English <i>zay</i> )	z	z
И	и	И	и	i (like English 'e)	{ i (as in } { <i>pique</i> ) }	i
Й	й	Й	й	и крѣтко (i <i>krátkøyi</i> )	{ y (as in } { <i>yet</i> ) }	y
І	і	І	і	и съ тóчкой (i <i>stóčkoy</i> )	{ i (as in } { <i>pique</i> ) }	i
К	к	К	к	ka (like English <i>kah</i> )	k	k
Л	л	Л	л	ell	l	l

\* Always "hard" as in Give.

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps. Ord.	Caps. Ord.			
М м	<i>М м</i>	em	m	m
Н н	<i>Н н</i>	en	n	n
О о	<i>О о</i>	o (as in <i>stock</i> )	o	o
П п	<i>П п</i>	pe (as in <i>pay</i> )	p	p
Р р	<i>Р р</i>	err (as in Scotch <i>air</i> )	r	r
С с	<i>С с</i>	ess	s	s
Т т	<i>Т т</i>	te (as in <i>tay</i> )	t	t
У у	<i>У у</i>	u (as in <i>rule</i> )	u	u
Ф ф	<i>Ф ф</i>	eff	f	f
Х х	<i>Х х</i>	khah	{ch in <i>loch</i> or German <i>ch</i> }	kh
Ц ц	<i>Ц ц</i>	tse (as in <i>tsay</i> )	ts	ts
Ч ч	<i>Ч ч</i>	če (as in <i>chaste</i> )	English <i>ch</i>	č
Ш ш	<i>Ш ш</i>	ša (as in <i>shah</i> )	English <i>sh</i>	š
Щ щ	<i>Щ щ</i>	šča	{šč rapidly {combined*}}	šč
Ъ ъ	<i>Ъ ъ</i>	yerr (ерь)	mute	—
Ы ы	<i>Ы ы</i>	yerý (еры́)	{y like i in <i>swim</i> }	y
Ь ь	<i>Ь ь</i>	yerĩ (ерь)	mute	—
Ѣ ѣ	<i>Ѣ ѣ</i>	yatĩ (ятѣ)	{like Russian e}	ě
Э э	<i>Э э</i>	e (like English <i>ě</i> )	{like <i>ě</i> in <i>ell</i> }	e
Ю ю	<i>Ю ю</i>	yu (like English <i>yu</i> )	yu	yu
Я я	<i>Я я</i>	ya (like English <i>yah!</i> )	ya	ya
Ѳ ѳ	<i>Ѳ ѳ</i>	fitá	f	
Ѵ ѵ	<i>Ѵ ѵ</i>	ĩžitsa	like u	

\* Sounded like shch in *freshcheese*.

## RUSSIAN SCRIPT AND ITALIC.

Cursive.		Italic.		Cursive.		Italic.	
<i>А</i>	<i>а</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>С</i>	<i>с</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>c</i>
<i>Б</i>	<i>б</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>б</i>	<i>Т</i>	<i>т</i>	<i>T</i>	<i>t</i>
<i>В</i>	<i>в</i>	<i>V</i>	<i>v</i>	<i>У</i>	<i>у</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>u</i>
<i>Г</i>	<i>г</i>	<i>G</i>	<i>г</i>	<i>Ф</i>	<i>ф</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>f</i>
<i>Д</i>	<i>д</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>Х</i>	<i>х</i>	<i>X</i>	<i>x</i>
<i>Е</i>	<i>е</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>Ц</i>	<i>ц</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>c</i>
<i>Ж</i>	<i>ж</i>	<i>Ж</i>	<i>ж</i>	<i>Ч</i>	<i>ч</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>c</i>
<i>З</i>	<i>з</i>	<i>Z</i>	<i>z</i>	<i>Ш</i>	<i>ш</i>	<i>S</i>	<i>s</i>
<i>И</i>	<i>и</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>Щ</i>	<i>щ</i>	<i>S</i>	<i>s</i>
<i>Й</i>	<i>й</i>	<i>Й</i>	<i>й</i>	<i>Ъ</i>	<i>ъ</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>b</i>
<i>І</i>	<i>і</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>Ы</i>	<i>ы</i>	<i>Y</i>	<i>y</i>
<i>К</i>	<i>к</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>Ь</i>	<i>ь</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>b</i>
<i>Л</i>	<i>л</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>l</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>b</i>
<i>М</i>	<i>м</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>m</i>	<i>Э</i>	<i>э</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>e</i>
<i>Н</i>	<i>н</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>Ю</i>	<i>ю</i>	<i>Y</i>	<i>y</i>
<i>О</i>	<i>о</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>Я</i>	<i>я</i>	<i>Y</i>	<i>y</i>
<i>П</i>	<i>п</i>	<i>P</i>	<i>p</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>
<i>Р</i>	<i>р</i>	<i>R</i>	<i>r</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>V</i>	<i>v</i>



## SPECIMEN OF HANDWRITING.

Въ минуту жизни трудную  
 Тьснитса-ль въ сердце грусть  
 Одну молитву чудную  
 Твержу я наизусть

Есть сила благодатная  
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ  
 И дышетъ непонятная  
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ  
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится  
 Сомненья далеко  
 И вьрится и плачется  
 И такъ легко, легко

## ITALIC.

Въ минуту жизни трудную  
 Тьснитса-ль въ сердце грусть  
 Одну молитву чудную  
 Твержу я наизусть  
 Есть сила благодатная  
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ  
 И дышетъ непонятная  
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ  
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится  
 Сомненья далеко  
 И вьрится и плачется  
 И такъ легко, легко.

(Лермонтовъ.)

# RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.

## THE ALPHABET.

PARTICULAR attention is drawn to *б, г, д, у, ж, и, н, с, м, у*; letters which often occasion the learner difficulty. To distinguish *м* and *у* in loose writing, a line is often used above and below, e.g. *m̄, ū*.

Remember in all transliterations a, e, i, o, u should be sounded as in *father, cortège* (or *été*, v. footnote, p. 3), *pique, Tom*, rule.

### § 1. THE USE AND VALUE OF THE LETTERS.

The Russian language is nearly phonetic, but has kept a number of letters that have lost their separate values, e.g. *и, ѣ, в, ѳ*; and further, like English, has a strong tonic accent, which tends to slur the preceding and following syllables.

e.g. *Wólverhampton, indúbitably, my lórd, láboratory, Súdäy, désultoriness.*

In such English words the vowels all become merged in the atonic vowel, phonetically written *ə* (e.g. *a* in "villa"), and in Russian a similar phenomenon obtains.

But the Russian alphabet, *with these reservations*, has symbols assigned to every separate sound, and thus is nearly phonetic.

The Russian tonic accent is very hard to acquire, and can only be learnt by practice. A few hints can be given here and there. *In this Grammar it is marked throughout*, as in all dictionaries.

## § 2. THE VOWELS.

(1) Russian has no less than fifteen symbols for vowels. They are partly survivals of an older stage of the language.

They are divided into "hard" and "soft," i.e. simple, or preceded by the consonant *y*. This distinction affects the grammar and pronunciation of every word, and the following table must be committed to memory:—

<i>Hard</i> :	а	э	ы	о	у	ь
<i>Soft</i> :	я	е, ё	и, ъ	ё	ю	ь

(2) a *accented*\* is sounded like *a* in "father," but somewhat shorter.  
Pronunciation of a and я. e.g. баба woman

a *unaccented* is sounded like *a* in "villa." e.g. баба.

The familiar phonetic symbol for this sound is *ə*, the *atonic* vowel. Thus баба is sounded "bábə."

Unaccented *a* is sounded like the Russian *e* after ж, ч, ш, щ. [v. § 5 (4).]

я *accented* is sounded *ya*. e.g. я I.

я *unaccented* is sounded *yě* or *yi* or *i*.

e.g. Баба-яга (Bábə-yigá), the name of the Russian witch; любить (lyúbit) they love.

In one instance я is sounded *a* in the reflexive suffix ся (sa). [v. § 41, V. (1).]

я (ya) also represents the Old Slav *nasal vowel* *ę* (sounded like French *in* in "brin"). This historical fact explains such verbal forms as жать, жму, жну, root žń, žň, and nouns in -мя, e.g. пламя, пламени flame. [v. § 21 and § 49, II.] Polish conserves the Old Slav nasals *o* and *e*, e.g. sędzić, Russian судить (súd'it') to judge.

\* "Accented" means emphasised, stressed. There are no written accents in Russian, except in elementary grammars and texts.

(3) э is used in foreign words adapted to Russian, but in no pure Russian words except *этотъ* (étot) this. It is sounded like the French è in "trève," or the English *ai* in "hair," but shorter. It is only used in transliteration of foreign *e*-sounds.

e.g. Эмденъ Emden, поэтъ (po-ét) poet, Эпъ Aisne  
 e and ѣ now represent the same sound, namely *yě*. In older Russian ѣ had a separate value, varying between *yě* and *ya*.\*

e.g. Екатерина (Yekaterín) Catherine  
 ѣмъ (yem) I eat

e is used:—

(i) When it represents *ë* [v. § 2 (5) and § 9].

(ii) When it is inserted to avoid heavy consonants and represents *ь* [v. § 2 (7) and § 32]; e.g. весь, вся (veś, fsya) all.

When unaccented it becomes a faint *yě* or *i* sound.

e.g. поле (pólyě) field синеe (sínyěyě) blue

The pronouns *одни́* and *одни́ѣ*, *они́* masc., *они́ѣ* fem. and neuter, are both sounded *одни́*, *они́* (adní, aní).

(4) The sound-value of *ы* is best understood as a rapid combination of German *ü* with *i*, *üi*; or, it may be got by placing the tongue in the *u* position, the lips in the *i* position. Roughly, it may be produced by sounding the English word *bin* deep in the throat.

No word can ever begin with the vowel *ы*.

\* The sound "ye" (e and ѣ) is open [yè] or close [yé] according as the following consonant is "hard" or "soft."

и is the pure *i*-sound, produced with elongation of the lips, as in French or German.

і (и съ точкою = with a dot) is the same, but only used *before* other vowels (e.g. мнѣніе [mněnie] opinion), except in one word, міръ the world.

When и is used in diphthongs or reduced to the consonantal value of *y* in “yet,” it is written ѣ and called и краткое (и short).

e.g. стаѣ (stāi) flock

ѵ (ѵжица) is equivalent to и, and only used to represent the Greek *υ* in a few Church words.

*Note.*—міръ world, миръ peace, муро myrrh, сѣнодь synod, and Владіміръ Vladimír (and similar names, e.g. Казіміръ).

(5) о *accented* is sounded like the German short *o* in Pronunciation “Gott,” and can be imitated by *shortening* of о and ъ. the English vowel-sound *au* (e.g. cough).

e.g. рогъ horn

о *unaccented* is sounded *a* or *ə*.

e.g. хорошó	(kħəřšó)	fine
порá	(pará)	time
слóво	(slóvə)	word.

ѐ is sounded *yó*, i.e. *o* with a *yod*-sound. It *only occurs* in accented syllables, and *in writing is not distinguished* from *e*, except in elementary books. Rules are given in § 9 for the change from *e* to *ě*.

e.g. ружьѐ	(ružó)	gun
несѐте	(nisyóte)	ye carry
жѐны	(žóny)	the wives
ѐлушка	(yóluškə)	fir-tree



(6) *y* is sounded like *u* in “rule” or “pull”; *ю* is sounded like *u* in “universe,” but shorter.

e.g. юбилéй (yubiléy) jubilee  
несú (nisú) I carry

(7) *ъ* and *ь* are mute in modern Russian. The former indicates the hardness of a consonant; the latter the softness, i.e. the absence or presence of a *yod* element.

e.g. былъ (byl) he was      вязъ (vyas) elm  
быль (byl') a tale      вязь (vyas') bond

But in older Russian *ъ* had a value something like the *u* in “nut,” and *ь* a soft short *i*-sound.

Hence the differences in conjugation and declension between родъ, рѳда (родъ generation), and ротъ, рѳа (ротъ mouth), терѳть to rub, тры I rub.

This is because in all open syllables (i.e. ending in a vowel) *ъ* and *ь* became mute; in all closed syllables (i.e. ending in a consonant) *ъ* and *ь* disappeared when unaccented, or became *o* and *e* when accented. E.g. дѳво́, дѳнѳ' (the bottom), now дно, довѳ; рѳтъ', рѳта́ (the mouth), now ротъ, рта; дѳнѳ', дѳнѳ́ (day), now день, дня [d'nyá].

Obviously then *ъ* and *ь* can only occur *medially* (in compounds) and *finally*.

*Further*, theoretically no Russian word ends in a consonant; the mute vowel is always added, even in foreign words.

e.g. Лондонъ London      Брюссель Brussels

Latterly, there is a tendency to discard final *ъ*, when it is merely orthographical.

## § 3. THE CONSONANTS—VOICED AND UNVOICED.

The consonants must first be divided into *unvoiced* and *voiced* (e.g. in English *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*).

We then have:—

	<i>Labials.</i>	<i>Dentals.</i>	<i>Gutturals.</i>
Mutes unvoiced:	п	т	к
„ voiced:	б	д	г
Nasals:	м	н	—
Spirants unvoiced:	ф ө	—	х
„ voiced:	в	—	—

The remainder must be separately classed:—

	<i>Sibilants.</i>		<i>Compound consonants.</i>	
Unvoiced:	с	ш	ч	ц, щ
Voiced:	з	ж	дж	—

Liquids: л and р.

## § 4. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONSONANTS.

(1) There is no nasal guttural in Russian, like the English *ng*.

e.g. жѣнка (*žón-ka*) little woman (нк as in *pancake*)

(2) When б, д, г, в, з, and ж are *final* consonants, they are sounded like п, т, к, ф, с, and ш.

e.g. рабъ	(rap)	slave
дѣдъ	(d'ět)	grandfather
рогъ	(rok)	horn
óстровъ	(óstrǒf)	island
ложь	(loš)	lie
розъ	(ros)	of the roses

(3) When in compounds *т* precedes *д*, the first *т* is assimilated to *д*.

e.g. *отд́ать* (ad-dát') to give up

(4) When in the same syllable *з* precedes *ж*, or *с* precedes *ш*, the combination is sounded like *жж*, and *шш*.

e.g. *позже́* (požži) later  
*вы́сший* (vyšši) highest

(5) *ф* is scarcely found in original Russian words; *ф* is almost disused, and has the same phonetic value, just as *ph* in "phonetic" has the same sound as *f* in "fine."

(6) When *к* and *г* precede *т* in the same syllable, they are commonly sounded as *х* (kh).

e.g. *но́гтя* (nókhtya) of the nail  
*кто́* (khtǒ) who

(7) Other instances of assimilation (*these constitute rules*):—

<i>бу́дто</i>	(búttǒ)	as if
<i>сдѣ́лать</i>	(zdělát')	to do
<i>отъ за́ри</i>	(adzarí)	from the dawn
<i>про́сьба</i>	(próz'bǎ)	request
<i>сча́стье</i>	(ščást'e)	happiness
<i>изво́зчикъ</i>	(izvóščik)	driver
<i>что́</i>	(štǒ)	what
<i>мы́гкий</i>	(myákhki)	soft
<i>ле́гче</i>	(lékhč'e)	easier

*Generally speaking the subsequent letter, voiced or unvoiced, attracts and assimilates the preceding.*

(8) ч before н is sounded ш.

e.g. скúчно (skúsnə) weary

(9) All consonants are sounded, *except* д and т in -здн-, -стн-; л in солнце (sóntsi) sun; лЬ final after labials.

e.g. пóзднйй	(pózni)	late
влáстныйй	(vlásny)	powerful
рубль	(rup')	rouble
мысль	(mýs')	thought

## § 5. THE "HARD" AND "SOFT" CONSONANTS.

### *Preliminary.*

The vowels have already been divided into two sets *hard* and *soft*, i.e. plain and ioticised, viz. :—

<i>Hard:</i>	а	э	ы	о	у	ъ
<i>Soft:</i>	я	е Ъ	и і	ё	ю	ь

Some consonants can be combined with any of the vowels. *These consonants are either hard or soft according as the vowel following is hard or soft.*

*Other* consonants are *naturally* "hard" or "soft," and can *only* be used with certain vowels.

*The strictest attention must be paid to these rules; as they explain the inflections, and dispose of most of the apparent exceptions.*

### (1) *The Labials.*

The labials п, б, м, в can *all* be either "hard" or "soft," and can be used with *any* of the vowels.

But note that л is inserted after п, б, м, and в in

all "soft" nominal forms and in all verbal forms before ю and е.

e.g.	ЛОВИТЬ	(lavít')	to catch
	ЛОВЛЮ	(lavlyú)	catch
	ТОРГОВАТЬ	(tərgəvát')	to trade
	ТОРГОВЛЯ	(tərgóvlya)	trade

Otherwise п, б, м, ф, в are sounded like English p, b, m, f, v, *subject to the general remarks* in § 4 (2).

(2) *The Dentals.*

The dentals can be used with *any* of the vowels. But they modify their pronunciation, and are changed in derivatives and verbal forms into palatals when "soft."

т, д and н "hard" are sounded as in English.

ть and дь are sounded midway between t and ě, something like the cockney "don't-yer know?" "did-you?"

нь is sounded *mouillé* like Spanish ñ, French and Italian *gn*.

These sounds are here denoted t', d' and n'.

Thus we have:—

*Hard*: та [тэ] ты то ту ть

*Soft*: тя те ти тө тю ть, sounded t'a, t'e, etc.

*Soft derivatives*: че чу

e.g.	ПЛАТИТЬ	(plat'ít')	to pay
	ПЛАЧУ	(plačú)	I pay
	МОЛОТИТЬ	(mələt'ít')	to thrash
	МОЛОЧУ	(mələčú)	I thrash
	МОЛОТЯТ	(mələt'ít)	they thrash



Under identical conditions д changes to ж.

e.g.	стыдѣ́ться	(stydítsa)	to be ashamed
	стыдѣ́тся	(stydýátsa)	they are ashamed
but	стыжѹ́сь	(styžús')	I am ashamed

Russian, however, has some Church Slavonic derivatives, in which under these same conditions т became ш, and д, жд.

e.g.	предѣ́	(přet)	before (preposition)
	прѣ́жде	(přéždi)	before (adverb)
	слáд-кѣ́и	(slátki)	sweet, слáще (slášče) sweeter
	родѣ́ть	(rad'ít')	to bear, рождáть (raždáít')

### (3) *The Gutturals.*

The gutturals к, г, х are in Russian words *never* combined with я, э, ы, ё, ю, ъ.

In Old Russian, before these vowels, they were regularly changed in *all* nominal and verbal inflections and in all derivatives to ц and ч, ж and ш or с respectively. In modern Russian these changes only take place in verbs and derivatives.

The series of hard and soft gutturals is as follows:—

*Hard:* ка                      ко      ку      къ

*Soft:*              ке      ки

*Soft Derivatives:* ча    че    чи    чо    оу    чё    чу

                          оу                      ци                      цу

Similarly with г and х; but г changes to ж, and х to ш.

Thus: га    ге    ги            го            гу    гъ

Derivatives жа    же    жи    жо    оу    жё    жу    жъ

                  ха    хе    хи            хо            ху    хъ

Derivatives ша    ше    ши    шо    оу    шё    шу    шъ    оу    шъ

Thus in Russian the "hard" noun **ВОЛКЪ** (volk) wolf, has a plural **ВОЛКИ**, but an adjective **ВОЛЧИЙ**.

Thus, too:—

**Прага** (Prágə) Prague, has an adjective **Пражскій**  
**Богъ** (Bokh) God, **Божество** (Bažestvó) deity  
**скакать** (skakát') to leap, **скачѹ** (skačú) I leap (= **кю**)  
**верхъ** (vérkh) above, **вершина** (viršínə) the height

**к** is always like the English *k* except in cases noted in § 4 (6).

**г** is always like the English *g* in "got" or "give": *except* (1) it is used to represent the foreign sound *h*, e.g. **Голландія** (Gollándiya) Holland; also in the Russian word **Господь** (Haspód') Lord. (2) It is sounded like a voiced *x* before dentals, e.g. **тогда** (takhdá) then; also in **Богъ** God, and names of towns ending in **бургъ**. (3) It is sounded **в** in the adjective gen. sing. termination **-аро**, **-оро**.

e.g. <b>самого</b>	(səməvó)	of himself
<b>дурного</b>	(durnóvə)	of the bad man
<b>добраго</b>	(dóbrəvə)	of the good man

**х** is always sounded as in German *ach* or *ich*.

e.g. <b>хата</b>	(khata)	hut
<b>хилый</b>	(khíly)	feeble
<b>сахаръ</b>	(sákhər)	sugar.

#### (4) *The Sibilants and Compound Consonants.*

**с, з, ш, ж, ч** are *always* sounded like the consonants in the English words *sword*, *zeal*, *short*, *leisure*, *church*; subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2, 7, and 8).

c and з can be hard or soft and take any vowel. When "soft" they are sounded high on the palate, as though a sharp *i*-sound followed. They are here denoted as *ś* and *ź*.

щ is a combination of *š* and *č*, which has to be practised.

ж, ш, and ц are always hard.

ч and щ always soft.

They can only be used with the following vowels:—

*Hard*: жа же жи жо ог жё жу жь ог жь  
ша ше ши шё ог шо шу шь ог шь  
ца це цы and ци цо цу ць

ю, я, ы are never used after ж, ч or щ.

c and з in soft derivatives change to ш and ж, e.g. *здѣсь* (*zd'ěś*) hear, *близь* (*bliz*) near, *здѣшній*, *ближній*.

*Soft*: ча че чи чо ог чё чу чь  
ща ще щи що ог щё шу щь

However, though in modern Russian the three sibilants ш, ж, ч are accounted hard, in older Russian ш and ж were soft; and the same rules of pronunciation in unaccented syllables apply to ша, жа, ча and ща as to я, viz. the vowel-value changes from a to i, and not a to *ə*.

e.g. часóвня (*česóvnyá*) clock-tower  
жарá (*zəpa or žirá*) heat  
шагí (*šegí*) steps

ц is always hard; it can, *unlike* any of the other sibilants, be followed by ы; and, *like* them, unaccented цо always becomes, and is written, це.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	
e.g.	отѣцъ	отцѡмъ	the father
	(at'éts)	(atsóm)	
	нѣмецъ	нѣмцемъ	the German
	(ně'mits)	(ně'mtsim)	

i.e. цо should have been spelt цѣ.

*Accented:*    шо    жѣ    ор    жо    чѣ    ор    чо    цо    шѣ    ор    цо

*Unaccented:*   ше            же            че            це            це

### (5) *The Liquids.*

л and р can be accompanied by any vowel.

The pronunciation of both лъ and ль is quite different from that of the English *l*.

лъ\* is a guttural-sounded *l* produced by raising the back of the tongue and contracting the air-passage: the front part of the tongue is drawn back and rounded, whilst the lips are rounded. It may be imitated by pronouncing the English word *pull* deep in the throat.

ль is a palatal almost like the French *l* in "vil."

ръ is trilled, more like the Scotch *r*, рь is palatal with a faint *yod*-sound. These sounds can only be acquired by ear.

With regard to the liquids л and р two special rules of formation should be noted:—

In roots of the type градъ, гóрадъ (grat, górat) town, the Church Slavonic had the monosyllabic form,

---

\* In Polish written *l*.

Russian the disyllabic; and as the Church language has greatly influenced Russian, the modern language has examples of both.

e.g. зláто, зóлото (zlátə, zólatə) gold; страна́ (strəná) land; сторона́ (stərəná) side; храни́ть (khrańít') to preserve; хорони́ть (khərańít') to bury; гóродь (górət) city; but Петрогра́дь (Pitragrát) Petrograd; бѣре́жь (b'érek) coast; but прибре́жье (přibréži) the foreshore; мо́лодь (mólod) young; мла́дше (mládši) younger.

#### § 6. CONGLOMERATED CONSONANTS WHEN FINAL.

Russian dislikes a word ending in a conglomeration of consonants. Thus Egypt is Егíпеть (Yegípit), where еть would in Old Russian have been written ьтъ. [v. § 2 (6).]

Similarly, in neuter and feminine nouns, where the genitive plural is the root, e.g. дѣ́ло, дѣ́ль (d'ě'la, d'ěl'), -еть, deed, a vowel o, e or ě is sometimes inserted, especially when the last consonant is л or р.

e.g. сестра́, сѣстрь or сестѣрь (sistrá, syóstr or sistyór) sister; игра́ (igrá) game, adjective игóрный (igórny); свáдьба (svád'ba) wedding, свáдебь (svádip); тѣтка (tyótka) aunt, тѣтокъ (tyótək); бáсня (básnya) fable, бáсень (básin); пáлка (pá'lkə) stick, пáлокъ (pá'łək).

#### § 7. TRANSLITERATION INTO RUSSIAN.

The Russians, possessing their own special alphabet, have to transliterate foreign names and words. Within the limitations of their script they strive to be phonetic.

For *h* they use г.

e.g. Гáмбургъ Hamburg.



For the English *th* they substitute *т*.

e.g. Smith Смитъ.

For German *eu*, *äu* they use *ей*.

e.g. Лейхтенбергъ Leuchtenberg.

For the French *u*, German *ü*, they use *ю*.

e.g. Брюссель Brüssel (Brussels).

For the French *eu*, German *ö*, they use and write *ë*.

e.g. Гёте Goethe.

For the rest they try to represent sounds accurately.

e.g. джентльменъ gentleman, Брайтонъ Brighton,  
комильфо comme il faut, Поанкарé Poincaré,  
Тулонъ Toulon, Жанъ Jean, Динанъ Dinant,  
Лувенъ Louvain, Бржежанъ Brzeżań.

All these foreign words, *if* they end in consonants or vowels that accord with Russian declensions, namely *ь*, *ъ*, *й*, *а*, *я*, *о* (neuter), *е* (neuter), are declined in the same way regularly.

e.g. Бэкономъ by Вacon, въ Лúвенѣ in Louvain,  
въ Динанѣ at Dinant (or Dinan). [v. § 23 (3).]

### § 8. RUSSIAN DIPHTHONGS.

Russian diphthongs are nearly all formed with *й*; and are *ай*, *яй*, sounded like *i* in "white," only broader; *ей* and *ѣй* like *ey* in "grey," but longer; *ой*, *ей* almost as English "boy"; and *уй*, *юй* like *ui* in "bruided."

The digraph *ay* denotes a true diphthong only in foreign words.

e.g. Брауншвейгъ Браунъ Braunschweig (Brunswick) Brown.

In Russian words (when found) the *a* and the *y* are separate vowels.

e.g. есаулъ a Cossack captain. Cf. in French "caoutchouc."

§ 9. THE CHANGE OF *e* TO *ë*.

The reader will have observed there is no symbol for *yo*, and the diæresis over *e* is only used in elementary school-books.

The following rules will guide him in the pronunciation of *e* as *ye*, or *yo*.

The rule is that accented *e* preceding a hard consonant or *oxytone* is pronounced *ë*.

e.g. селó (síló) village, plural сѣла, сѣль (sółə, sól);  
 пла́чень (pláčit) he weeps, but растётъ (rastyót)  
 he grows; ружье (ružó) gun; смерть (smert')  
 death; ё́лшка (yóluskə), ё́лка (yołkə) fir-  
 tree; мертвѣй (myórtvy) dead; ко́нѣмъ  
 (kənyóm) by the horse; нáше (náši) our  
 (neut. nom. sing.); твое (tvayó) thy (neut.  
 nom. sing.).

Exceptions:—

*e* accented before a hard syllable is *not* pronounced *ë*—

(1) In words ending in -ецъ, e.g. купецъ (kupéts) merchant. This is because *п* was originally soft. [v. § 5 (4).]

(2) Before the adjectival terminations -скій and -ній, which are unaccented and were originally preceded by *ь*, softening the consonant.

e.g. женá (žíná) wife, plur. жены (žóny), adj.  
 жѣнскій (žénski).

(3) In foreign words.

e.g. апте́ка	(apt'ékə)	apothecary's shop
биле́тъ	(bilét)	ticket
депе́ша	(d'epéšə)	despatch

(4) In words from Church Slavonic.

e.g. крестъ (křest) cross

нёбо (něbo) heaven, but нёбо palate of mouth

надѣжда (nad'ěždǎ) hope, but надѣжа (popularly)

And in some few other words, such as дѣрзкій bold, дѣрзость boldness, сквѣрный nasty, учебный educational, левъ lion (but Лѣвъ the name Leo), предметъ subject.

*These words may also be taken as an exercise in the application of the rules regarding pronunciation.*

(5) In some words where e should be spelt ѣ, which never undergoes this change, cf. § 2 (3).

e.g. блескъ brightness, мелкій little, мелочь trifle, вредъ damage

(6) The preposition безъ without, which is generally proclitic.

e.g. безъ щитá (bišščitá) without a shield

(7) In the words верхъ above, цѣрковь church, пѣрвый first, четвѣргъ Thursday, чѣрпать to draw up, мѣрквуть to grow dusk, стѣрва carrion, серпъ sickle, верба willow, сѣрдце heart, исчѣзъ vanished, ужѣ already, вообще in general.

ě remains before a soft consonant:—

(1) In declensions and conjugations where other forms are hard and ě is regular.

e.g. несѣшь                      несѣтъ, несѣмъ, несѣте

thou carriest    he, we, ye carry

утѣсь precipice, на утѣсь on the precipice

so берѣза birch-tree, въ берѣзѣ in the birch.

(2) In the instrumental singular of soft feminine nouns in я, like the hard nouns.

e.g. грозóю (грозá threat)

землѣю (земл́я earth)

*But моéю, твоéю, своéю, with e not ë.*

Also before the adjectival termination -кiй. As explained in § 33 (8), this -кiй is a grammarian's misrendering of the former form -кой, and, this к being only visually soft, there is no real exception to the rule. So, too, щекá cheek, щѣки cheeks (because after gutturals ы is never used; v. § 5 (3)).

(3) In the following words ѣ becomes ѣ̇, like e, ë:—

звѣдá	star	звѣзды (plural)
гнѣздó	nest	гнѣзда (plural)
приобрѣстí	to obtain	приобрѣлъ* (past tense)
цвѣстí	to bloom	цвѣлъ (past tense)
сѣдлó	saddle	сѣдла (plural)
надѣвáть	to dress	надѣванъ (past part. pass.)
		позѣвывáть to yawn
		запечатлѣнъ impressed
		смѣтка sally

*These words are merely misspelt.*

In two words я is sounded ë:—

трясь he shook, sounded трѣсь

запрягъ he yoked (his horse), sounded запрѣгъ

Lastly, еí, the genitive of она́ she, is sometimes pronounced еë like the accusative (which is ee, sounded yiyó).

\* And other compounds of this verb.

## ACCIDENCE.

## § 10. THE PARTS OF SPEECH (ча́сти рѣчи).

The parts of speech in Russian are :—

<i>Declined</i>	{	(1) Nouns, <i>и́мя существи́тельное</i>
		(2) Adjectives, <i>и́мя прилагáтельное</i>
		(3) Pronouns, <i>мѣстоимѣ́нiе</i>
<i>Conjugated</i>	(4) Verbs, <i>глаго́ль</i>	
<i>Declined</i>	(5) Numerals, <i>и́мя числи́тельное</i>	
<i>Uninflected</i>	{	(6) Adverbs, <i>нарѣ́чiе</i>
		(7) Prepositions, <i>предло́гъ</i>
		(8) Conjunctions, <i>сою́зъ</i>
		(9) Interjections, <i>междомѣ́тiе</i>

There is *no article*.

Occasionally *одинъ* (one) is used as an *indefinite article*.

There is *no special* form for adverbs formed from *adjectives*. The neuter singular is used, except in adjectives in *-скій*, where the form is *-ски*.

The verbs only have one regularly formed tense, namely the present ; and no other personal forms for past tenses, passives, moods, etc. These meanings are supplied by other simple modifications.



## THE NOUN (имя существительное).

## § 11. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Russian noun has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter (роды мужескій, жѣнскій, средній). But Russian presents no great difficulties in the ascertainment of gender, for—

(a) Nouns *proper or common* denoting males only, whatever the termination, are masculine (“natural” gender).

e.g. Ивѣнъ John, Пѣтя Peter, Ивѣнъко John, воеводѣ general, сиротѣ orphan (masc. or fem.).

(β) Nouns denoting females always have a feminine termination (“natural” and “grammatical” gender coincide).

(γ) The inflections of the masculine and neuter are identical, save in the nominative, vocative, and accusative singular and plural; just as in Latin *bellum* only differs from *equus* in these cases.

(δ) Generally speaking, the termination fixes the gender, unlike French or German, where the beginner has no guide, and can only learn by rote.

(i) Thus, nouns ending in ъ, ь and ѣ are masculine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. столъ	table	шрифтъ	writing.
Царь	Tsar	университѣтъ	university
бѣзисъ	basis	конь	horse
крѣзисъ	crisis	слонъ	elephant
	соловѣй		nightingale

(ii) Nouns ending in о, е, ѣ are neuter.

e.g. поле	field	солнце	sun
дѣло	fact	бѣльѣ	washing

(iii) Words ending in а, я, ь are feminine, *despite foreign etymology.*

e.g. рука́ hand      пу́ля bullet  
 дра́ма drama (τὸ δράμα, le drame, das Drama,  
 etc.)

With this apparent exception, *as in Latin and Greek*, that words in а and я of masculine signification are masculine, but declined like feminines. Unlike German or French, the gender primarily follows the meaning, not the termination.

e.g. мужчи́на man      слуга́ man-servant  
 дя́дя uncle      Пе́тя Peter (short for Пе́тръ)  
 юно́ша youth      уби́йца murderer (masc. or fem.)

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Terminations:</i>	ъ	а	о
	ь	я	е
	й	ь	мя

## § 12. THE DECLENSIONS.

There are three declensions.

(1) Original *o*-stems: *masculines in* ъ, ь *and* й, *neuters in* о, ё, е.

(2) Original *a*-stems: *feminines in* а and я.

(3) Original *i*-stems:

(a) One masculine word, путь path.

(β) Many feminines, principally abstracts in -ость, e.g. ско́рость speed.

(γ) Two relics of older declensions:

ма́ть, ма́тери, cf. *mater, matris*, mother  
 дочь, до́чери daughter

(δ) Neuters in **мя, мени**.

e.g. **имя, имени** name, cf. Latin *nōmen, nōminis*; **сѣмя, сѣмени** seed, cf. Latin *sēmen, sēminis* [v. § 2 (2)]

In Old Slavonic there was, as in Latin, an *æ* declension (e.g. *manus, manūs*). This has disappeared, but has left traces in the irregular genitives and locatives in *y* of the first (Russian) declension: also in the masculine genitive plural termination *-овъ*.

## § 13. THE CASES.

There are seven cases.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) Nominative, Именительный падежь              |   |
| (2) Vocative, Звательный                         | „ |
| (3) Accusative, Винительный                      | „ |
| (4) Genitive, Родительный                        | „ |
| (5) Dative, Дательный                            | „ |
| (6) Instrumental, Творительный                   | „ |
| (7) Locative or Prepositional, Предложный падежь |   |

This list looks formidable, but, as with Apollyon's lion in "The Pilgrim's Progress," apprehensions vanish on a close approach.

The vocative only subsists in a few Church words, e.g. **Бо́же** from **Богъ** God, **Христѣ** from **Христось** Christ, **Господи** from **Господь** Lord, **Исусе** from **Исусь** Jesus, **отче** from **отець** father. [v. § 69, II.]

The objective is identical with the nominative in all nouns denoting inanimate, but with the genitive in all nouns denoting animate objects. This rule has one exception—for the one instance where the accusative has an independent form, namely, the accusative singular of nouns in *a* and *y*.

- e.g. **Я видѣлъ Царя** (genitive) **и Царіцу**.  
I saw the Tsar and the Tsaritsa.  
**Учитель прочѣлъ ваше сочинѣніе**.  
The teacher read your work.

The original Slav accusative has vanished (except in the singular of nouns in *a* and *я*), and has been replaced by the nominative or genitive forms.

In all negative sentences the object is in the genitive, whatever the noun, and without exception.

e.g. Я не окóнчилъ своѣй рабóты.

I have not finished my work; the genitive being *partitive* in meaning "nothing of my work."

Я никогдá не слыхáлъ таки́хъ скáзокъ.

I never heard such stories.

The instrumental case marks the agent by whom, and the locative or prepositional is used to denote the place in which; in modern Russian *it cannot be used by itself*, but only with certain prepositions, hence it is often called the "prepositional."

e.g. Въ селѣ́ (fsilě) in the village.

Я говорíлъ о Никола́ѣ (ya govórit̄ anikoláye).

I was talking of Nicholas.

Thus, virtually, there are only five separate forms for the cases—nominative, genitive, dative, instrumental, and locative.

#### § 14. THE NUMBERS.

There are two numbers, singular and plural (едíнственное числó, мнóжественное числó). The forms are almost identical for masculine nouns in *ъ*, *ь*, *й*, and feminines in *а*, *я*; neuters in *о*, *е*, *ё* only differ in forming the nominative and accusative plural in *а*, *я*, as in Latin.

In ancient Russian there was a dual, but this is obsolete. Some few forms of it survive as irregularities. [v. § 24 (3).]

The plural of nouns in *н*, of the third declension, is slightly different.

## § 15. HARD AND SOFT NOUNS.

All nouns of the first and second declensions are "hard" or "soft" throughout: i.e. there is a double scheme of declension in "hard" or "soft" vowels, according as the root is hard or soft.

Those who have learnt the rules in § 3 and § 5 will find no difficulty in grasping this fundamental difference, which underlies all Russian inflections.

Nouns of the *и* declension, the third, are naturally all "soft."

## SCHEME OF DECLENSIONS.

	First Declension.				Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
	Masculine. Hard. Soft.		Neuter. Hard. Soft.		Feminine. Hard. Soft.		Fem.	Neut.
<i>Sing.</i>								
Nom.	ъ	ь ѣ	о	е ё	а	я	ь	мя
Acc.	Like N. or G.		о	е ё	у	ю	ь	мя
Gen.	а [у]	я [ю]	а	я	ы	и	и	мени
Dat.	у	ю	у	ю	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
Instr.	омъ	емъ	омъ	емъ	ою,	сю	ію	менемъ
Loc.	ѣ [у]	ѣ [ю]	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
<i>Plur.</i>								
Nom.	ы	и	а	я	ы	и	и	мена
Acc.	Like N. or G.		а	я	Like N. or G.		и	мена
Gen.	овъ ей	евъ ей	ъ	ей	ъ	ь ей	ей	мень
Dat.	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	ямъ	менамъ
Instr.	ами	ями	ами	ями	ами	ями	ями	менами
Loc.	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	яхъ	менахъ

It will be observed that in the plurals there is scarcely any divergence.



§ 16. EXAMPLES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN THE  
FIRST DECLENSION (первое склонение).

*Singular.*

	tooth	work	=ery
N. V.	зубѣ	трудъ	крикъ
Acc.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Gen.	зуба	трудá	крика
Dat.	зубу	трудú	крику
Instr.	зубомъ	трудомъ	крикомъ
Loc.	зубѣ	трудѣ	крикѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	зубы	труды	крики
Acc.	зубы	труды	крики
Gen.	зубовъ	трудовъ	криковъ
Dat.	зубамъ	трудамъ	крикамъ
Instr.	зубами	трудами	криками
Loc.	зубахъ	трудахъ	крикахъ

*Singular.*

	key	a German	march
N. V.	ключъ	нѣмецъ	маршъ
Acc.	ключъ	нѣмца	маршъ
Gen.	ключá	нѣмца	мáрша
Dat.	ключú	нѣмцу	мáршу
Instr.	ключомъ	нѣмцемъ	мáршемъ
Loc.	ключѣ	нѣмцѣ	мáршѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	ключи	нѣмцы	мáрши
Acc.	ключи	нѣмцевъ	мáрши
Gen.	ключей	нѣмцевъ	мáршей
Dat.	ключамъ	нѣмцамъ	мáршамъ
Instr.	ключами	нѣмцами	мáршами
Loc.	ключахъ	нѣмцахъ	мáршахъ

These six examples illustrate regular forms in "hard" consonants. *Please observe the variations necessary, after gutturals and palatals, and re-read § 5 (3) and (4). The rules in § 5 apply to all declensions and conjugations.* Thus *ключáмъ* is sounded *klučám*, *мáрши* *máršy*, etc.

*Examples of Weak Stems.*

*Singular.*

	hero	horse	battle	knife (ж originally soft)
N. V.	герóй	конь	бо́й	ножѣ
Acc.	герóя	коня́	бо́й	ножѣ
Gen.	герóя	коня́	бо́я	ножа́
Dat.	герóю	коню́	бо́ю	ножу́
Instr.	герóемъ	конѣмъ	бо́емъ	ножомъ
Loc.	герóѣ	конѣ	бо́ѣ	ножѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	герóи	кóни	бо́и	ножи́
Acc.	герóевъ	коней́	бо́и	ножи́
Gen.	герóевъ	коней́	боёвъ	ножéй
Dat.	герóямъ	коня́мъ	бо́ямъ	ножа́мъ
Instr.	герóями	коня́ми	бо́ями	ножа́ми
Loc.	герóяхъ	коня́хъ	бо́лахъ	ножа́хъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; they are explained, and rules stated, in § 5 (3) and (4).

§ 17. EXAMPLES OF NEUTER NOUNS OF FIRST DECLENSION.

*Hard Stems.*

*Singular.*

	yoke	village	quality
N. V. A.	ѣго	селó	кáчество
Gen.	ѣга	села́	кáчества
Dat.	ѣгу	селу́	кáчеству
Instr.	ѣгомъ	селомъ	кáчествомъ
Loc.	ѣгѣ	селѣ	кáчествѣ

		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	и́га	се́ла	ка́чества
Gen.	игъ	се́ль	ка́чествъ
Dat.	и́гамъ	се́ламъ	ка́чествамъ
Instr.	и́гами	се́лами	ка́чествами
Loc.	и́гахъ	се́лахъ	ка́чествахъ

*Soft and Sibilant Stems.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	sea	school
N. V. A.	мо́ре	учи́лице
Gen.	мо́ря	учи́лица
Dat.	мо́рю	учи́лицу
Instr.	мо́ремъ	учи́лицемъ
Loc.	мо́рѣ	учи́лицѣ

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	моря́	учи́лица
Gen.	морéи	учи́лицъ
Dat.	моря́мъ	учи́лицамъ
Instr.	моря́ми	учи́лицами
Loc.	моря́хъ	учи́лицахъ

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	gun	knowledge
N. V. A.	ружьé	знáние
Gen.	ружья́	знáнiя
Dat.	ружьó	знáнiю
Instr.	ружьёмъ	знáнiемъ
Loc.	ружьѣ	знáнiи

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	ру́жья	знáнiя
Gen.	ру́жей	знáнiй
Dat.	ру́жьямъ	знáнiямъ
Instr.	ру́жьями	знáнiями
Loc.	ру́жьяхъ	знáнiяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; a discussion of them will be found in § 27.

§ 18. EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (второе склонение) IN а AND я.

The scheme for these nouns is:—

	<i>Singular:</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	а	я	ы	я
Acc.	у	ю	Like N. or G. [v. § 13]	
Gen.	ы	я	ъ	я
Dat.	ѣ	ѣ	амъ	ямъ
Instr.	ою ои* ею ей*		ами	ями
Loc.	ѣ	ѣ	ахъ	яхъ

Examples:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			
	Hard.	Hard.	Soft.	Sibilant.
N. V.	widow	hand	bullet	soul
Acc.	вдовá	руká	пу́ля	душа́
Gen.	вдовы́	руки́	пу́ли	души́
Instr.	вдово́ю	руко́ю	пу́лею	душо́ю
D. L.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́лѣ́	душѣ́
	<i>Plural.</i>			
N. V.	вдо́вы	ру́ки	пу́ли	ду́ши
Acc.	вдовѣ́	ру́ки	пу́ли	душѣ́
Gen.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́ль	душѣ́
Instr.	вдова́ми	рука́ми	пу́лями	душа́ми
Dat.	вдова́мъ	рука́мъ	пу́лямъ	душа́мъ
Loc.	вдова́хъ	рука́хъ	пу́ляхъ	душа́хъ
	<i>Singular.</i>			
	Sibilant.	Hard.	Fricative.	Fricative.
N. V.	candle	tear	empress	food
Acc.	свѣ́ча	слезá	цари́ца	пи́ща
Gen.	свѣ́чи	слезы́	цари́цы	пи́щи
Instr.	{ свѣ́чею } { свѣ́чою }	слезо́ю	цари́цею	пи́щею
D. L.	свѣ́чѣ́	слезѣ́	цари́цѣ́	пи́щѣ́

\* Contracted form.

*Plural.*

N. V.	свѣчи	слѣзы	царіцы
Acc.	свѣчи	слѣзы	царіцѣ
Gen.	свѣчѣ	слѣзѣ	царіцѣ
Instr.	свѣчами	слезами	царіцами
Dat.	свѣчамъ	слезамъ	царіцамъ
Loc.	свѣчахъ	слезахъ	царіцахъ

*For pronunciation consult §§ 2 (2), 5 (3), 5 (4).*

*Soft and Vocalic Stems.**Singular.*

	earth	lightning	family
N. V.	землі	молнія	семья
Acc.	зѣмлю	молнію	семью
Gen.	землі	молніи	семьи
Instr.	землѣю	молніею	семьею
D. L.	землѣ	молніи	семьѣ

*Plural.*

N. V.	зѣмли	молніи	сѣмьи
Acc.	зѣмли	молніи	семей
Gen.	земель	молній	семей
Instr.	землями	молніями	семьями
Dat.	землямъ	молніямъ	семьямъ
Loc.	земляхъ	молніяхъ	семьяхъ

*Examples of Masc. in a, я.**Singular.*

	Hard.	Soft.
N. V.	стáроста elder	дѣдя uncle
Acc.	стáросту	дѣдю
Gen.	стáросты	дѣди
Instr.	стáростою	дѣдею
D. L.	стáростѣ	дѣдѣ



<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	ста́росты	дяди
Acc.	ста́рость	дй́дей
Gen.	ста́рость	дй́дей
Instr.	ста́ростами	дй́дями
Dat.	ста́ростамъ	дй́дямъ
Loc.	ста́ростахъ	дй́дяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart. Consult § 2 (5), § 9, and § 11.

§ 19. THIRD DECLENSION (трѣтье склонѣнiе):  
NOUNS IN **и** and **мя**.

These nouns are always soft; most of the terminations are in **и**.\*

MASCULINE.

Only one example survives:—

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	пу́ть path	N. V. A.	пу́ти
G. D. L.	пу́ти	Gen.	пу́тѣй
Instr.	пу́тѣмъ	Dat.	пу́тѣмъ
		Instr.	пу́тѣми
		Loc.	пу́тѣхъ

Formerly there were others of this type; e.g. день day, now a soft masc. of the first declension. But "after midday" is "полу́дни" (pəpəlúdní); дни being the old genitive.

§ 20. THIRD DECLENSION IN **и**: FEMININES.

These are numerous and important. In form they are liable to confusion with soft masculines like конь horse.

---

\* Just like the Latin *turris*; with which type they correspond philologically.

E.g.

*Singular.*

	bone	horse	door
N. V.	кость	лошадь	дверь
Acc.	кость	лошадь	Declined like КОСТЬ
Gen.	кости	лошади	
Dat.	кости	лошади	
Loc.	кости	лошадѣи	
Instr.	костью } костію }	лошадью } лошадію }	

*Plural.*

N. V.	кости	лошади	Declined like КОСТЬ
Acc.	кости	лошадѣи	
Gen.	костей	лошадѣи	
Dat.	костѣмъ	лошадѣмъ	
Instr.	костѣми	лошадѣми	
Loc.	костѣхъ	лошадѣхъ	

*Singular.*

	fortress	care
N. V.	крѣпость	осторѣжность
Acc.	крѣпость	осторѣжность
Gen.	крѣпости	осторѣжности
Dat.	крѣпости	осторѣжности
Loc.	крѣпости	осторѣжности
Instr.	крѣпостью	осторѣжностью

*Plural.*

N. V.	крѣпости	—
Acc.	крѣпости	—
Gen.	крѣпостѣи	—
Dat.	крѣпостѣмъ	—
Instr.	крѣпостѣми	—
Loc.	крѣпостѣхъ	—

Observe звѣрь wild beast, which is now masculine has звѣрьми instr. plural, besides звѣрьми.

§ 21. THIRD DECLENSION IN И : NEUTERS IN ИЯ.  
Consult § 2 (2).

Those who know Latin grammar have learnt the forms like *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *sēmen*, *sēminis*.

The Russian words of this type are very similar. E.g.

<i>Sing.</i>	name	flame	tribe	seed
Nom. Voc. Acc.	и́мя	пла́мя	плéмя	сѣ́мя*
Gen. Dat. Loc.	и́мени			
Instr.	и́менемъ			
<i>Plur.</i>		Like и́мя	Like и́мя	Like и́мя, but gen. plural сѣ́мянъ
Nom. Voc. Acc.	именá			
Gen.	имёнъ			
Dat.	именáмъ			
Instr.	именáми			
Loc.	именáхъ			

§ 22. THIRD DECLENSION : REMAINS OF OLDER FORMS.

(1) *Feminine* : There are only two.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	mother	daughter
Nom. Voc.	мáть	дóчь
A. G. D. L.	мáтери	дóчери
Instr.	мáтерью	дóчерью
	<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. Voc.	мáтери	дóчери
Acc. Gen.	матерéй	дочерéй
Dat.	матеря́мъ	дочеря́мъ
Instr.	{ матеря́ми матерьми́	{ дочеря́ми дочерьми́
Loc.	матеря́хъ	дочеря́хъ

Cf. *māter*, *mātris* ; μήτηρ, μητρός ; θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός.

\* Cf. Latin *sēmen*.

(2) *Neuter*: There is only one, and this noun is irregular.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	child		children
Nom. Voc. Acc.	дитя́	Nom. Voc.	дѣти
Gen. Dat. Loc.	дитя́ти	Acc. Gen.	дѣте́й
Instr.	дитя́тею	Dat.	дѣтямъ
		Inst.	дѣтьми́
			(and дѣтьми́)
		Loc.	дѣтяхъ

§ 23. (1) The foregoing sections, 16 to 22, illustrate the rules of Russian declension.

Some space must still be devoted to *apparent* exceptions (for euphonic reasons), to *true* exceptions (which are very few), and the principles of the accentuation in each class.

It is assumed that the reader has mastered §§ 2-6 and § 9, which supply the phonetic basis, the fundamental laws of Russian orthography.

(2) Some nouns are used only in the plural. These are masculine, feminine or neuter, according as their genitive assigns them to one or other of the declensions.

e.g. но́жницы, но́жницъ, etc., fem., scissors

щипцы́, щипцо́въ, etc., masc., pincers

ворота́, воро́тъ, etc., neut., gates

(3) Some nouns are indeclinable; namely, those which do *not* end in ъ, ь, й, а, я (m. and f.), and о, е (neut.). Such are (i) a few Russian words, e.g. кофе coffee. (ii) Many foreign words, especially proper names; e.g. Са́рти Sarti, Перру́ччо Petruccio, Лубе́ Лoubet, Марте́лло Martello. The case in which these nouns stand must be understood from the context; e.g. въ поэ́зии Лонгфе́лло in

Longfellow's poetry, во время президентства Карно́ in the Presidency of Carnot. On the other hand, names like Рена́нь Renan, Дина́нь Dinant, Аахенъ Aix-la-Chapelle, Шопе́нь Chopin, are declined like ordinary nouns. [v. § 7.] E.g. Рѣчь сэра Эдуарда Гре́я, the speech of Sir Edward Grey (Грей).

§ 24. REMARKS ON THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

(1) In old Slavonic, as in Latin, there used to be a declension in "u," e.g. *mānus, manūs*; e.g. in Russian сынъ son (Gothic *sunus*). This declension has completely vanished, but has left traces in the following irregularities:—

(a) Some nouns, denoting materials, have mostly *unaccented* genitive in -у, -ю.

e.g. ча́ю from ча́й tea  
 са́хару from са́харъ sugar  
 наро́ду from наро́дъ people

e.g. ча́шка ча́ю a cup of tea, but э́тотъ ро́дъ са́хара this sort of sugar.

e.g. мно́го наро́ду many people, ха́ра́ктеръ а́нглийскаго наро́да the character of the English people.

Also in the phrases:—

съ ве́рху from on high  
 съ ни́зу from beneath  
 безъ то́лку senseless  
 изъ ви́ду out of sight

and a few others.



(β) Some *monosyllables* have a locative in -у, -ю *accented*, used with **въ** in, **на** on.

e.g. **въ лѣсу́** in the forest, but **при лѣсѣ́** at the wood  
**въ годѹ́** in the year  
**въ бою́** in the fight  
**въ краю́** on the edge  
**на льду́** on the ice  
**въ снѣгу́** in the snow  
**въ раю́** in Paradise  
**на берегу́** on the shore [v. § 5 (5).]

(γ) **сынѣ́** son, **кумѣ́** godfather, and others, insert the syllable **-ов-** into the plural.

e.g. [сыны́ sons (poetical)]	сыновѣ́я
кумѣ́ godfather	кумовѣ́я
зять son-in-law	зятевѣ́я
сватъ marriage-broker	сватовѣ́я

(δ) It is in the nouns in “u” that the genitive plural **-овѣ́** originated; it has spread to nearly all masculine stems.

(2) Some nouns form their plural in **-ья́**; this is really an old feminine collective form.

e.g. **братъ** brother, **братѣ́я** (gen. **братѣ́евъ**, dat. **братѣ́ямъ**, instr. **братѣ́ями**, loc. **братѣ́яхъ**)  
**камень** stone, **каменѣ́я** stones, **ка́мни** single stones  
**бросать ка́мнями́**, not **каменѣ́ями**, to stone a man  
**стулъ** a chair, **сту́лья**  
**сукъ** a bough, **су́чья** [v. § 5 (3).]  
**уголь** coal, **уго́лья**

зубъ tooth, зѹбья teeth (of a machine), зѹбы teeth (of a man)

листь leaf, лѣстья leaves of a tree, листы́ (leaves of paper)

другъ friend, друзья́ (gen. друзѣй)

князь prince, князья́ (gen. князѣй)

мужъ husband, мужья́ (gen. мужѣй)

зять son-in-law, зятья́ (gen. зятѣй), also зятевьѣ

дѣверь the husband's brother, дѣверья́ (gen. дѣверѣй)

(3) Some masculine nouns form their plural in -á.

e.g. рукавъ	sleeve	рукава́
бѣрегъ	shore	берега́
глазь	eye	глаза́
пóлогъ	bed-canopy	полога́
рогъ	horn	рога́
кóлоколъ	bell	колокола́

It will be observed most of these are essentially *duals* in meaning; *this á is the old dual, Nom. and Acc.* Cf. § 26 (5) (3).

This á ending has been extended to a few nouns—

e.g. гóродъ	town	города́
лѣсь	wood	лѣса́
гóлосъ	voice	голоса́
домъ	house	дома́

as well as most loan-words in -ерь and -орь—

e.g. дóкторъ	doctor	доктора́
профѣссоръ	professor	профессора́
кучерь	coachman	кучера́
<i>but</i> актѣрь	actor (French <i>acteur</i> )	актѣры
имперáторъ	Emperor	имперáторы

Other instances are :—

о́бразъ	shapes	о́бразы	shapes	образа́	images
хлѣ́бъ	bread	хлѣ́бы	loaves	хлѣ́ба	corn
цвѣ́тъ	colour	цвѣ́ты	flowers	цвѣ́та	colours
мѣ́хъ	bellows	мѣ́хи			
мѣ́хъ	fur	мѣ́ха			
о́рденъ	the order	о́рдены	the orders (e.g. religious)	ордена́	the orders (decorations)

(4) The genitive plural of masculines in -ъ originally ended in -ъ, and was only accentually differentiated from the nominative. This genitive plural in -ъ still obtains in the neuters and feminines. [v. § 24 (1) (δ).]

Hence it is (v. paradigm § 15) that masculines ending in a weak consonant form the genitive plural in -ей; e.g. царь, царя́, царь'ь, which became царь'й, and was pronounced and spelled царей in Russian, after ь and ъ had become mute.

So, too, words in -жь, -а, -шь (e.g. ножъ knife, ножа́, ноже́й), because [v. § 5 (4)] ж and ш, and ч and щ *were all originally soft*.

But й is regarded as a consonantal ending, and takes -евъ; e.g. строй construction, строевъ.

Some masculine nouns still have a genitive plural in -ъ,

e.g.			Gen. plur.
во́лосъ	hair		воло́съ
разъ	time (so many times)		разъ
сапо́гъ	boot		сапо́гъ
драгу́нъ	dragoon		драгу́нъ
ту́рокъ	Turk		ту́рокъ
гренаде́рь	grenadier		гренаде́рь
глазъ	eye		глазъ
ре́крутъ	recruit		ре́крутъ

as well as all those which form their nominative singular in *-инъ*, and are thus distinguished by diversifying the nominative.

Lastly, masculine nouns of measurement—

e.g. *фунтъ* a pound (= 0.90 lb. avoirdupois)

*сажень* a lineal measure (= 7 feet)

make their genitive plural thus: *фунтъ*, *сажень*.

(5) Nom. sing. in *-инъ*.

Many words, especially words descriptive of race, creed, etc., have a *singular* with the adjectival form *-инъ* [v. § 34 (2)], but drop the *-инъ* in the plural, forming the nom. plural in *-е* or *-а*. E.g.

	Roman	Christian	Englishman
Nom. sing.	Рѣмлянинъ	христіанинъ	Англичанинъ
Gen. sing.	Рѣмлянина	христіанина	Англичанина
Nom. plur.	Рѣмляне	христіане	Англичане
Gen. plur.	Рѣмлянъ	христіанъ	Англичанъ

	Tatar	master	wife's brother
Nom. sing.	татаринъ	баринъ	шуринъ
Gen. sing.	татарина	барина	шурина
Nom. plur.	{ татары } { татаре }	баре	шурья
Gen. plur.	татаръ	баръ	шурьевъ

*хозяинъ* (master of the house) is not quite regular. In the *singular*, *хозяинъ*, *хозяина*, etc.

<i>Plural</i> Nom. Voc.	хозяева [cf. § 24 (1) (γ)]
„ Acc. Gen.	хозяевъ
„ Dat. Instr. Loc.	хозяев-, амъ, ами, ахъ

In this connection [v. § 34 (2)] the possessive adjectives in *-инъ* used as *proper names* are declined as stated in that section, and not like the above.

## (6) Irregular formations.

*Singular.*

	Christ	The Lord
Nom.	Христóсь	Госпóдь (Насрóд')
Voc.	Христé	Гóсподи
Gen.	Христá	Гóспода
Dat.	Христý	Гóсподу
Instr.	Христóмъ	Гóсподомъ
Loc.	Христѣ	Гóсподѣ

neighbour

devil

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Voc.	сосѣдъ	сосѣди	чортъ*	чѣрти
Acc.	сосѣда	сосѣдей	чóрта	чертéй
Gen.	etc.		чóрта	царь, soft stem.
Dat.			чóрту	
Instr.		Like царь, soft stem.	чóртомъ	Like царь, soft stem.
Loc.			чóртѣ	

человѣкъ, man (in general : мужъ husband, мужчина male), generally forms its plural in люди (declined like a plural of an и stem).

When the plural is used, the genitive plural is человѣкъ, e.g. двáдцать человѣкъ twenty men.

## § 25. ACCENTUATION OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Most masculine nouns retain the accent of the nominative ; but, as the original nominative termination ѣ has become mute, and cannot be accented, some nouns seem to throw the accent forward on to the other terminations.

\* Not to be confused with черта (fem.) feature.



E.g. **человѣкъ** man, **сарай** barn, **братъ** brother, retain the accent on the syllable accented in the nominative, i.e. on the stem; e.g. **человѣкомъ**, **сарайю**, **брата**.

No general rule can explain the variance of the accent; the following principles may be a guide.

I. The following derivatives were originally accented on the termination **ъ**, and therefore throw the accent forward on to the other terminations:—

- (1) All names in **-инъ**, e.g. **Карамзинъ** Karamzin.
- (2) All words in **-ецъ**, e.g. **купецъ** merchant.
- (3) All derivatives in **-акъ**,\* **-икъ**, **-лкъ**, **-окъ**, **-ежъ**, **-ачъ**; e.g. **дуракъ** fool, **старикъ** old man, **падѣжъ** case, **палачъ** executioner, **кусокъ** morsel, **скрипачъ** fiddler, **тюфикъ** mattress.
- (4) All derivatives in **-унъ**, **-аръ** (except **государь** Lord, as a royal title, **государя**), **-иръ**, **-ирь**, and the months in **-брь**; e.g. **девятого октября** on the 9th October, **табунъ** herd of horses, **столяръ** carpenter, **пузырь** bellows; but **панцырь** (**панцыря**) cuirass.
- (5) A very large number of words, such as **столъ** table, **быкъ** ox, **женихъ** bridegroom, **плодъ** fruit, **полкъ** regiment, **языкъ** tongue, **пѣтухъ** cock. Nothing but reading and practice can determine which these are.

II. Secondly, many words retain the accent as in the nominative in the singular, but throw it forward in the plural; e.g. **садъ** garden, **чинъ** rank, **шагъ** step.

\* Cf. the Greek accent *акós, икós*,

III. Thirdly, some words throw the accent forward on to the termination in the genitive plural and following cases.

e.g.	богъ	god	богóвъ
	воръ	thief	ворáми
	гвоздь	nail	гвозд́ями
	крúгъ	circle	кругáмъ
	лѣбедь	swan	о лебед́яхъ

In all cases the original accent on the nominative must be learnt from the dictionary or a teacher; *as a general rule, a masculine noun that throws its accent forward on the genitive singular throws it forward on to all the terminations; and a noun not accented on the last syllable retains the same accent throughout.*

This section must be read subject to all the rules stated in § 24 and § 9.

#### § 26. REMARKS ON THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Except, in so far as the masculine nouns have more inflections, the special remarks in § 24 apply to neuters as well.

(1) In § 24 (4) it was observed that all masculine nouns of the first declension ending in a consonant + ь or -жь, -шь, -щъ, -чь (which were all originally soft, v. § 5 (4)), form the genitive plural in -ей. The same applies to all soft neuter nouns in -е, and the same arguments hold good.

e.g. по́ле field полей

But, with this difference, neuters in -цѡ, -це, -щѡ, -ще, -шѡ, -ше, -чѡ, -че, form the genitive plural in ѣ.

e.g. плечѡ shoulder плечѣ [v. also § 26 (5) (β).]  
 жилище home жилищѣ  
 лицѡ face лицѣ

Nouns in -ѣ form the genitive plural in -ей, the reason being that the ѣ is inserted to divide the syllables, so that such words come under the general rule of neuters ending in ѣ.

e.g. ружьѣ gun ружей  
 питьѣ drink питей

(2) Neuters in -іе, and feminines in -ія (these terminations being unaccented) spell the ѣ terminations as they are sounded, viz. и.

e.g. пониманіе the understanding  
 Loc. о пониманіи

These nouns in -іе are very common, being the regular verbal nouns formed from the infinitives to express the abstract idea of the verb.

e.g. выразить to express, выраженіе the expressing  
 имѣть to own, имѣніе the estate

The *genitive plural* in nouns in -іе and -ія is -іи.

e.g. Я не хочу егѡ имѣній  
 Ya ne khačú yivó iměni  
 I do not desire his property

In poetry and colloquial speech such nouns are contracted, e.g. желанье for желаніе.

Some such nouns form a genitive plural in *ьевъ*, e.g. *плáтье* clothing, *плáтьевъ*; *кúшанье* food, *кúшаньевъ*; but these are exceptions, for such nouns are in reality paroxytone collectives, the old collective termination being *-ьѣ*, plural *-ья*.

These nouns are *only* found in the contracted form, and may be compared with the plurals *друзья́*, *братья́* [v. § 24 (2)].

(3) *Mixed masculine and neuter declension.*

*Augmentative* nouns in *-ище*, e.g. *селó* village, *селище* a big village, form their plural like that of the soft masculine nouns, e.g. *конь*. Thus *селищи*, *селищей*, etc. But *кладбище*, cemetery, is regular; the augmentative sense has disappeared.

So, too, *diminutives* in *-ко*.

e.g. *словéчко* a little word

Pl. Nom. Voc. Acc. *словéчки*

Gen. *словéчекъ* [v. § 6.]

Observe, too, *очкó*, *очки́* (little eyes), now spectacles; *очкóвъ*, and so on.

Some other miscellaneous examples are:—

<i>сóлнце</i> sun	<i>сóлнца</i> and <i>-ы</i>	<i>сóлнцевъ</i>
<i>дно</i> bottom	<i>дны</i>	<i>донъ</i>
<i>я́блоко</i> apple	<i>я́блоки</i>	<i>я́блокъ</i> or <i>я́блоковъ</i>

(4) *Plurals in -ья* [v. § 24 (2)].

Neuter words capable of a collective meaning have a collective plural like the masculine nouns.

e.g. <i>дéрево</i>	tree	<i>дерéвья</i>
<i>перó</i>	feather	<i>пéрья</i>
<i>крылó</i>	wing	<i>крыла</i> and <i>крылья</i>

*Observe.*—колѣно, knee, has three meanings and three plurals: (1) колѣна́ family or race; (2) колѣни, колѣне́и knees; (3) колѣ́нья, колѣ́ньевъ knots on wood.

(5) *Irregular forms.*

These may conveniently be considered under two heads: (a) obsolete declensions, of which a few relics subsist; (β) dual forms.

(a) *Obsolete forms.*

Не́бо heaven, чу́до miracle, сло́во word, тѣ́ло body, ко́ло wheel, formerly belonged to the same declension as the Latin *genus, generis*, Greek *νέφος, νέφους (νέφεσος)*. Hence the adjectival forms are: словéсный literary, небéсный heavenly, чудéсный wonderful, тѣ́лэсный corporeal, and колéсный pertaining to a wheel.

Of all these forms only two survive in regular use: чу́до, чудеса́, чудéсь [not чудёсь, cf. § 9, exception (4)]; and не́бо, небеса́, небéсь [not небёсь].

The modern Russian for wheel is колесо́, plural колéса.

Сло́во and тѣ́ло are regular like дѣ́ло.

In words denoting the young of animals a plural -ята is still used, the singular being -ёнокъ.

e.g. котёнокъ	kitten	котя́та, котя́ть
жеребёнокъ	colt	жеребя́та, жеребя́ть
волчёнокъ	wolf-cub	волча́та, волча́ть

[v. § 5 (3).]

So, too, цыпля́та chickens, ребя́та children (in lofty language, used as the plural of ребёнокъ), etc., and also вну́къ grandson, вну́чата great grand-children.



*(β) Dual forms.*

о́ко	eye (poetical only)	о́чи, о́чей
у́хо	ear	у́ши, у́шей
колѣ́но	knee	колѣ́ни, колѣ́ней
сто	one hundred	двѣ́сти two hundred
плечо́	shoulder	плѣ́чи, плечѣ́

§ 27. ACCENTUATION OF THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE  
FIRST DECLENSION.

*As in all cases the accent on the nominative must be ascertained from the dictionary or the teacher.*

*Dissyllabic words reverse the accent in the plural.*

e.g.	тѣ́ло	body	тѣ́ла
	мо́ре	sea	моря́
	се́ло	village	се́ла [v. § 9.]
	ребро́	rib	рёбра
	де́рево	tree	деревья́
	письмо́	letter	письма́, писемѣ́
	пра́во	right	права́
	се́рдце	heart	сердца́
Ехсепт	блю́до	vessel	блюда́
	го́рло	throat	го́рла

*Trisyllabic* nouns, if oxytone, have the plural paroxytone; if the stem is accented, make the plural oxytone.

e.g.	колесо́	wheel	колёса
	полотно́	cloth	полотна́
	зе́ркало	mirror	зеркала́, зе́ркаль or зерка́ль
	кру́жево	lace	кружева́, кру́жевѣ́
	о́зеро	lake	озера́ or озе́ра

Derivative nouns in -ie, -ство, retain the same accent.

e.g. существó	being	существо́ва
знáние	knowledge	знáнія
правíteльство	administration	правíteльства

### § 28. REMARKS ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей.

Practically the same conditions obtain as with the neuters. [v. § 26 (1).]

Soft nouns in -я and -ча, -ша and -жа, regularly form the genitive plural in -ь and -чь, and the instrumental singular in -ёю, -ею; -чою, -чею; -шою, -шею; -жою, -жею. [v. § 5 (4).] So, too, nouns in -ца preceded by a vowel: instrumental singular -цою, -цею; genitive plural -ць.

But nouns in -ча, -жа, -ша, when preceded by a consonant, form the genitive plural in -ей: and the same applies to nouns in -ща.

e.g. вѣкша	squirrel	вѣкшей
саранча́	grasshopper	саранчѣй
Similarly: дѣ́дя	uncle	дѣ́дей
нозд́ря	nostril	нозд́рей
до́ля	lot	до́ль and до́лей
за́ря	dawn*	за́рь and за́рей

Nouns in -ья also have a genitive plural in -ей *regularly*, when accented; -ий unaccented.

e.g. лгу́нья	liar	лгу́нѣй
ста́тья	article	ста́тѣй
го́стя	guest (fem.)	го́стѣй
сви́нья	pig	сви́нѣй

\* Also the evening half-light.

(2) In ordinary speech and in poetry the instrumental singular -ою, -ею is contracted to -оѣ and -еѣ, and often thus written.

(3) Many nouns in the second declension are masculine, *because of their meaning*, as in Latin *agricola*.

e.g. дѣ́дя uncle, ю́ноша youth, Са́ша diminutive of Алекса́ндръ, Ко́ля diminutive of Никола́й, Пе́тя diminutive of Пе́тръ, слуга́ servant (feminine form служанка), сирота́ orphan, masc. or fem. *according to meaning*, судья́ judge, бродя́га vagabond.

(4) There are very many derivative nouns in -ія, amongst them the loan-words from the Latin *tio*, e.g. на́ція nation.

The rule regarding these is the same as with the derivative neuters in -іе [v. § 26 (2)], namely that the ѣ forms are written and sounded и.

e.g. а́рмія army, въ а́рміи in the army, а́рмій genitive plural; so, too, Арме́нія Armenia, А́нглія England, Фра́нція France, etc.

*Note.*—Ма́рія, о Ма́ріи; but Ма́рья, о Ма́рьѣ, Ма́ру.

## § 29. ACCENTUATION OF SECOND DECLENSION.

The rules for the accentuation of this declension are comparatively easy.

Only oxytone nouns, i.e. those accented on the final syllable, can shift the accent. All others retain the accent on the same syllable.

Of oxytone nouns only those which are dissyllabic can shift the accent.

Amongst these [v. § 5 (5)] must be included liquid stems, such as борода́ beard, голова́ head (contrast глава́ chapter).

Trisyllabic and polysyllabic nouns retain the same fixed accent.

For the *oxytone dissyllables* there are two sets of rules.

(a) The accent goes back on the root *only* in the nom. plur.

e.g. вдова́	widow	вдо́вы
волна́	wave	во́лны
игра́	game	и́гры
ре́ка	river	ре́ки
судья́	judge	су́дья
слуга́	servant	слу́ги
стре́ла	arrow	стре́лы
струна́	string	стру́ны
	(e.g. of violin)	
узда́	reins	у́зды

and a few others.

(β) The accent goes back to the stem in the acc. sing. as well.

e.g. рука́      hand      ру́ку, ру́ки  
 (Occasionally, by analogy, жёнамъ, жёнами, жёнахъ ;  
 сётрамъ, зёмлямъ, звёздамъ are mistakenly used.)

борода́	beard	бóроду, бóроды
вода́	water	во́ду, во́ды
нога́	foot	но́гу, но́ги

## § 30. REMARKS ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The original nouns belonging to this class are few in number, but very common in use. Some of them have both Slavonic and Russian forms [v. § 5 (5)].

e.g. во́лость an administrative district, вла́сть power.\*

The derivative nouns in -ость are innumerable, and abstract nouns are mostly created with this termination. All such derivative nouns accent the root-syllable. [v. § 98, V.]

e.g. ста́рь old, ста́рость old age.

(1) There is a special accented locative ending in *и*, used *only* after *на* and *въ* [cf. § 24 (1)].

e.g. гру́дь breast, на груди́; вѣ́твь twig, на вѣтви́;  
сте́пь steppe, въ степи́; Русь Russia (poetical,  
usual word Россі́я), на Руси́.

(2) Це́рковь church, has in the dat., instr., and loc. plural a for я.

i.e. церквѣ́мъ, -ѣ́ми, -ѣ́хъ

## § 31. ACCENTUATION OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The accentuation follows the paradigms in § 20; but some reservations must be made.

(1) Many of these nouns accent the termination on the *dative*, *instrumental*, and *locative plural*.

e.g. до́лжность duty, должностѣ́мъ, -ѣ́ми, -ѣ́хъ

---

\* Such feminines in -ость and -чь correspond etymologically with the English forms "might," "draught," German "Wacht," etc.



(2) Amongst such nouns, the following have the accented locative singular [v. § 30].

бровь	brow	печь	oven	связь	connection
грудь	breast	рѣчь	speech	часть	part
кость	bone	степь	steppe	плóщадь	
честь	honour	тѣнь	shadow		public square
ось	axle	цѣпь*	chain		

### § 32. THE "EUPHONIC" VOWELS o, e, ё.

In § 2 (7) and § 6 brief reference was made to the former vocalic values of ъ and ь, as short *ö* and *ĩ*, and to the aversion of the Russian language from heavy combinations of final consonants, especially when there are liquids (such as в, р and л) in the conglomeration.

Under these two heads simple phonetic changes, *which are written*, occur in *all* the declensions, and these rules must be applied to all of the declensions.

I. *Extrusion of ъ and ь when unaccented.* The ancient Russian for "day" was дѣнь-ь'. When ь became mute, being "open," the first vowel was transformed to е; hence the nominative дѣнь, genitive днѣ. Similarly днó bottom, gen. pl. донѣ (for дѣнь-ь', дѣнь).

This law may be tabulated:—

ъ, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes о; unaccented disappears.

ь, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes е or ё; unaccented disappears, or is retained in spelling to soften the consonant.

---

\* Not to be confused with цѣпь flail.

e.g. лóбъ (formerly лѣбъ') forehead, gen. лóба; ротъ (formerly рѣтъ') mouth, gen. рóта; левъ (formerly лѣвъ') lion, gen. лѣва\*; сотъ, gen. of сто (for съто), one hundred; лёдъ ice (лѣдъ'), gen. лѣда.\*

*Incidentally it may be stated here that the great complication in the accentuation of masculines arises from the loss of the final inflection of the nominative. Most Russian nouns retain the accent on the same syllable; but where the original inflection was formerly accented and has become mute (i.e. either ъ or ь), the accent had to be thrown back.*

*In the feminines and neuters the original inflection a, o, has been retained; hence the rules are much simpler.*

Similar instances are: пѣсъ dog, genitive пса; мгнъ, but мгновѣние, both meaning moment, the latter should have been spelt мѣгновѣние; мглá mist, for мѣглá; возъ, verbal prefix meaning "up," but взростáть to grow up (for вѣзростáть); сонъ sleep, сна; лёнъ linen, лѣна, etc.

As a contrast: Russian, мѣдъ, мѣда mead (the drink), Old Russian, медъ, меда; i.e. the original accent was on the stem.

Some other instances may illustrate the same point. All derivatives in ёцъ (formerly ѣцъ) were once oxytone, i.e. accenting the termination ь'; hence, they "throw the accent forward" in the other inflections, and extrude the é of the nominative which is merely epenthetic, a strengthening of the original ь (отѣцъ).

\* The ь is retained to indicate the soft sound.

So that the genitive of отѣцъ is отцá ; so, too —

купѣцъ	merchant	купцá
вѣнѣцъ	wreath	вѣнцá

*But*, where the -ецъ is unaccented, the accent is stable and the form merely abbreviated in spelling, e.g. Нѣмецъ German (for Нѣмѣцъ), Пѣмца, etc.

Conversely in the genitive plurals in ѣ or њ, о, е, е must be restored.

e.g. яйцó	egg	яи́цъ *
злó	evil	золъ
кольцó	ring	ко́лець
письмó	letter	пи́семь
окнó	window	о́конь
стеклó	pane of glass	сте́коль
крѣслó	armchair	крѣселъ
овцá	sheep	ове́ць
судьба́	fate	судѣ́бь
ру́чка	little hand	ру́чекъ
копѣйка	the coin	копѣе́къ

*And observe that after a vowel the symbol ѣ replaces the symbol њ, but has the same value.*

e.g. ше́я neck, diminutive ше́йка, ше́екъ, i.e. šeika, šeik' ; соловѣ́й nightingale, соловѣ́я, соловѣ́евъ ; муравѣ́й ant, муравѣ́я, муравѣ́евъ.

In these last two instances ѣй represents an original Ъ'й, which in Russian became ѣй. The original inflection would have been соловѣ́'й, соловѣ́'я.

II. *Insertion of о and е for euphony.* Similarly, heavy final combinations of consonants are lightened in

\* Irregular for ле́ць.

the nominative singular of masculines and genitive plurals of feminines and neuters; i.e. the terminations in ѣ and ѝ.

Some instances have already been given; viz. *стекло́, кресло́, письмо́*.

Others are:—

		<i>Gen. Plur.</i>
ма́рка	a <i>mark</i> (German coin)	ма́рокъ
и́гла	needle	и́голъ
и́гра	game	и́горъ
ро́зга	cane	ро́зогъ
сестра́	sister	сесте́рь or се́стръ
пѣ́сня	song	пѣ́сень
ба́рышня	“mademoiselle”	ба́рышень
со́тня	a body of one hundred	со́тень
ку́хня	kitchen	ку́хонъ or ку́хонь
земля́	earth	земель
ребро́	rib	ребе́рь
ведро́	ewer	веде́рь

In the nominatives:—

		<i>Gen.</i>
оре́ль (pronounce aryól)	eagle	орла́
о́гонь	fire	огни́
вѣ́теръ	wind	вѣ́тра
вѣ́хоръ	whirlwind	вѣ́хря
наёмъ	hire	найма́
бо́ецъ	warrior	бойца́
за́яць	hare	за́йца

Observe the vowel o or e is inserted according as the syllable is hard or soft.

Thus, too, тьмá darkness, тёмный dark, тща́тельно (for тыща́тельно) in vain, тощи́й lean, and compare Russian дочь, дóчери, daughter, with the Church Slavonic дщѣри (for дьщѣри), cf. θυγατέρες.\*

An apparent exception really confirms the rule, namely, that, when the effect of extruding the euphonic vowel would be to accumulate consonants, the vowel is retained.

e.g. мертвѣць	corpse	мертвеца́
близнець	twin	близнеца́

III. Nevertheless, some heavy combinations of final consonants are tolerated.

(1) In loan words.

e.g. шрифть type (from German) [v. § 11 (δ).]  
министръ minister (from French)

(2) In the genitive plural of the abstract termination -ство.

e.g. о́бществъ from о́бщество company  
министѣрствъ from министрѣство ministry

(3) In a few words where resolution would not be easy.

e.g. жѣртва sacrifice жертвъ

(4) In such words as рубль (masculine) rouble, корабль ship (masculine like конь), the л is mute. [v. § 4 (9).]

(5) In the formation of predicative adjectives no vowel is inserted before р.

e.g. мудръ wise, быстръ swift. [v. § 36 (4).]

\* Whence падчерица, § 97.



IV. In the feminine in *и* of the third declension observe—

цѣрковь	church	цѣркви, цѣрковью
любовь	love	любви, любовью
вошь	louse	вши, вощью
ложь	lie	лжи, ложью
рожь	rye	ржи, рожью

But when *Любовь* is a girl's name it retains in "o" throughout; thus, *Любови, Любовью*.

## THE ADJECTIVE.

### § 33. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *The syntactical importance of the adjective in Russian.*

In English the adjectival function can be expressed in many really irregular ways; e.g. by a noun, "the village pump"; by combinations of adjectives and nouns, "the Civil Service Examination," even to the point of ambiguity, e.g. "the Women's Red Cross Slavery Abolition League"; also, vulgarly, by adverbs, "this 'ere bloke." In German, also, long compound nouns are yet more used to show the dependence.

Russian adjectives are fully declined in gender, number, and case.

In Russian, composition of words is rare and occasional, and fully declined adjectives must be used.

e.g. зубная боль tooth-ache

правительственные указы government decrees

баранья шерсть sheep's wool, etc.

Cf. in French, le ministère de l'intérieur, Home Office; les perquisitions militaires, war demands.

(2) In addition to this, Russian frequently prefers an adjective where other languages use other forms.

e.g. стеклынная бутылка a glass bottle, une bouteille de ver; St. Elias' day Пльипъ день; Igor's Army Ёгоревъ полкъ; the local custom тамошній или здѣшній обычай (from тамъ there, здѣсь here); a reindeer's horns оленыя рога.

Such adjectives are called *possessive*, e.g. Петро́въ праздникъ St. Peter's holiday; Царі́цыно село the Empress's village; or *descriptive*, e.g. бо́жіи храмъ God's Temple.

Ordinary adjectives when used with nouns are called *attributive*, e.g. до́брый good, худо́жественный artistic; i.e. those not attached to some particular noun, and not serving as a kind of inflected genitive.

(3) Except in the nominative (e masculine, я feminine and neuter) there is no distinction of gender in the plural adjective.

(4) Russian discards the copula "I am, he is," etc., and uses a special form as the *predicative* adjective; this form being the nominative, singular and plural, of the old simple form of the attributive adjective.

e.g. я	Геор́гий	I am	George	
	онъ	стола́рь	he is a carpenter	
	они́	миѣ	знако́мы	they are known to me

(5) The attributive adjective can in general have two forms as stated in the preceding section (4), one full, when agreeing with a noun, the other predicative; the latter only used and only surviving with a nomina-

tive form. (Certain predicative relations are expressed by a dative or instrumental, v. § 69, V. and VI.).

This apparent anomaly requires explanation. In older Russian, as in the Teutonic languages, there were two forms of adjectival declension, the determinative and the simple.

The simple form, as in most European languages, was inflected almost the same as the noun, an adjective being in a sense only a fuller form of noun capable of all three genders. Thus *Rōmānus* in Latin is exactly like *equus*, horse, *Rōmāna* like *mensa*, and *Rōmānum* like *bellum*; so, too, *ingens* has the same forms as *gens*, and so on. Similarly, in French the adjective *occidental* follows the form of the noun *cheval*, and *occidentale* of any feminine noun. In Latin there exists little but a grammarian's distinction between *bonus*, *bona*, good, masculine and feminine, and *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter.

So, too, in Russian the simple adjective originally followed nominal declensions almost exactly.

But, there being no article, the Old Slav pronoun *н*, he (obsolete in Russian), was compounded with and postponed to the simple form to make the so-called *determinative* form [v. § 35].

Thus as in German we find *guter Mann*, but *der gute Mann*, in older Russian, too, two forms existed. In modern Russian the *determinative* form has swept the simple form out of existence, except (a) in the *nominative* when used *predicatively*, (β) in the *possessives* and *descriptives*, some of which follow the simple inflection, (γ) in rather high-flown archaistic style when the old simple forms are used.

(6) The accentuation of the determinative, possessive and descriptive forms, is constant; that of the simple form is very difficult, as difficult as the nominal forms which it follows. We have seen [§ 25] how the loss of the nominative suffix *ъ, ь* has confused the rules for accentuation, and [§§ 27 and 29] the slighter variances in the neuters and feminines. All these rules come in to complicate the formation of the predicative adjective.

(7) In modern Russian no instance survives of adjectives in the third declension.

(8) In the eighteenth century, when Lomonósov (1711–1765) created the modern Russian script out of the old Cyrillic, and set hard and fast rules for Russian, the grammarians introduced some unnecessary complications in the spelling of the determinative forms; e.g. *но́вый* new, *ди́кий* wild, for *но́вой, ди́кой* (*но́вые* masc. pl., *но́выя* fem. and neut. pl.).

(9) The adjective may acquire a substantival meaning, but is still declined as an adjective.

e.g. <i>городово́й</i>	policeman
<i>портно́й</i>	tailor
<i>насе́комое</i>	insect
<i>сто́ловая</i>	dining-room
<i>ди́тская</i>	nursery

#### § 34. THE SIMPLE, POSSESSIVE AND DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) For *reference* this is an example of the simple adjective. These forms are now disused save as stated in § 33 (5).

## Dear

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	до́рогъ	до́рого	дорога́	дороги́
Acc.	Like N. or G.	до́рого	дорогу́	Like N. or G.
Gen.	дорога́		дороги́	дороги́хъ
Dat.	дорогу́		дороги́	дороги́мъ
Instr.	дороги́мъ		дорого́ю	дороги́ми
Loc.	дорого́мъ		дороги́	дороги́хъ

## Good

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	до́брь	до́бро	до́бра	до́бры
Acc.	Like N. or G.	до́бро	до́бру	Like N. or G.
Gen.	до́бра		до́бры	до́брыхъ
Dat.	до́бру		до́бры́	до́брымъ
Instr.	до́брымъ		до́брою	до́брыми
Loc.	до́бромъ		до́бры́	до́брыхъ

(2) *The formation of possessive adjectives and examples.*

Possessive adjectives are formed from names in the first and second declensions; those from the first end in -овъ, those from the second in -ивъ, -инъ.

The accentuation is *constant throughout all* the cases. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from monosyllables generally accent the termination: Пе́тровъ Peter's, Царё́въ the Tsar's. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from other names, not monosyllables, retain the accent as in the name: e.g. Алексѣ́й, Алексѣ́евъ; Алекса́ндръ, Алекса́ндровъ.



Adjectives in *-инъ* are similarly declined, and retain the accent of the name.

e.g.	Сáша	(Alexander)	Сáшинъ
	Никíта*	Nikíta	Никíтинъ
	Илья́	Elias	Ильи́нъ
	Трѳ́ица	Trinity	Трѳ́ицынъ
	сестр́а	sister	сестр́инъ
	Цар́ица	Tsarítsa	Цар́ицынъ
	д́ядя	uncle	д́ядинъ

*Note.*—Nouns in *-ца* take *-цынъ*; and *мужъ* husband, *братъ* brother, *госпѳ́дь* Lord, irregularly form *м́ужнинъ*, *брáтнинъ*, *госпѳ́день*.

The two following examples illustrate the declensions:—

## Peter's

	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	Петрѳ́въ	Петрѳ́во	Петрѳ́ва	Петрѳ́вы
Acc.	Like N. or G.	Петрѳ́во	Петрѳ́ву	Like N. or G.
Gen.	Петрѳ́ва		Петрѳ́вой	Петрѳ́выхъ
Dat.	Петрѳ́ву		Петрѳ́вой	Петрѳ́вымъ
Instr.	Петрѳ́вымъ		Петрѳ́вою	Петрѳ́выми
Loc.	Петрѳ́вомъ		Петрѳ́вой	Петрѳ́выхъ

## Lord's

	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	госпѳ́день	госпѳ́дне	госпѳ́дня	госпѳ́дни
Acc.	Like N. or G.	госпѳ́дне	госпѳ́дню	Like N. or G.
Gen.	госпѳ́дня		госпѳ́дней	госпѳ́днихъ
Dat.	госпѳ́дню		госпѳ́дней	госпѳ́днимъ
Instr.	госпѳ́днимъ		госпѳ́днею	госпѳ́дними
Loc.	госпѳ́днемъ		госпѳ́дней	госпѳ́днихъ

\* Νικήτης.

*Note* that very many family names end in -овъ and -инъ, and are similarly declined, *except* that the locative singular masculine is -ѣ.

e.g. въ Петровомъ письмѣ in Peter's letter, but  
я говорѣлъ о Петровѣ I was speaking of  
Petróv.

### (3) *Formation of descriptive adjectives.*

Most of these adjectives are soft, being formed from nouns by adding -iŭ to the stem. The nominative singular is, masc. -iŭ, neut. -ѣ, fem. -ья; and the accent is *constant* and *always* that of the noun. The accusative singular feminine is also in -ью.

Otherwise their declension is like that of the soft determinatives. [v. § 35 (2).]

*Observe* that the rules in § 5 as to mutation of consonants must be applied in the formation of these adjectives.

e.g. волкъ wolf, волчій, волчье, волчья  
Богъ god, божій, божье, божья  
лиса fox, лисій, лисье, лисья  
дѣвица or дѣвица maiden, дѣвицїй, дѣвицье,  
дѣвицья  
пёсъ dog, пёсїй, пёсье, пёсья, i.e. пёсья звѣзда  
the dog-star

*Also* дерево wood, деревянный wooden  
кожа leather, кожаный of leather

This termination -янный is hard, and is generally applied to words denoting materials.

## § 35. THE DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) *The scheme and the formation.*

This form of adjective is the most common in Russian, embracing all adjectives except the simpler declensions stated in § 34 (1) and (2).

The paradigms inserted *infra* are to illustrate the application of the rules in § 5 to these adjectives.

A short historical statement will explain away the apparent complications.

In Old Slavonic there was a 3rd person pronoun declined as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	и	е	я	и	я	я
Acc.	и	е	ю	я	я	я
Gen.	его́	его́	ея	ихъ	ихъ	ихъ
Dat.	ему́	ему́	ей	имъ	имъ	имъ
Instr.	ими	ими	ёю	ими	ими	ими
Loc.	емъ	емъ	ей	ихъ	ихъ	ихъ

By adding this vocalic pronoun on to the simple adjectival forms, like a postponed article, a *determinative* form was obtained, which in the older language had a slightly different meaning, such as is given in English by the use of the definite article.

In modern Russian the simple form is obsolete in the Nom., but a survey of the paradigm of the full adjective will show where the fusion has taken place, e.g. мо́лѡдъ, мо́лѡдѡй, i.e. мо́лѡдѣи, and so on.

Remember that in Russian the *r* of the genitive singular is sounded *в*. [v. § 5 (3) (3).]

<i>Singular.</i>						<i>Plural.</i>						
Masc.		Neut.		Fem.		Masc.		Neut.		Fem.		
Hard	Soft*	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	
N.	ый	ий	ое	ее	ая	яя	ые	ие	ья	ія	ья	ія
	ой											
accented												
A.	As N or G	ое	ее	ую	юю	N. or G.	Nom.	N. or G.				
Masc. and Neut.						All genders.						
G.	ого	яго	ой	ей		ыхъ	ихъ					
	ого											
accented												
D.	ому	ему	ой	ей		ымъ	имъ					
I.	ымъ	имъ	ою†	ею		ыми	ими					
L.	омъ	емъ	ой	ей		ыхъ	ехъ					

The eighteenth century grammarians are responsible for two unnecessary complications.

(i) The invariable nom. sing. masc. hard should be -ой, as *ъ* when sounded in Russian becomes *о*. [v. § 32, I.]

But it was decreed that the spelling should be -ой, only when the termination was accented; otherwise -ый.

Consequently in guttural stems [v. § 5 (3)] this -ый had to be spelled -ий.

e.g. но́вый new, дѣ́кий wild

But in such cases дѣ́кий and similar words are still sounded d'ikəj, as though spelt дѣ́кой; whereas дѣ́кие, where the *i* is there of right, is pronounced d'ikiyě.

\* There are *no* soft adjectives accented on the termination except palatal stems (nominally hard).

† Commonly contracted, v. § 28 (2).

(ii) The only plural nominative form *should* be -е. The -я is purely orthographic, and in all cases the e and the я in -ья, -ье, -ья, -ые, -ия, -ие are sounded alike, viz. үё.

e.g. дѳбрыя дѳбруйё, худья (худой bad) khudyё

(iii) When the termination is accented, it is usual to write -ѳго and not -аго.

e.g. храброго of the brave man (khrábrəvə); but чужого of the strange man (čuzŃvə).

## TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>Hard.</i>		Full form.	Short form.
	Masc.	-ый мѳлый	мѳль gentle
	Neut.	-ое мѳлое	мѳло
	Fem.	-ая мѳлая	мѳла
<i>Soft.</i>	Masc.	-ий сѳний	сѳнь blue
	Neut.	-ее сѳнее	сѳне
	Fem.	-ья сѳняя	сѳня

(2) *Examples of the determinative adjective.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	бѳмый	бѳлое	бѳлая
Acc.	N. or G.	бѳлое	бѳлую
Gen.	бѳлаго		бѳлой
Dat.	бѳлому		бѳлой
Instr.	бѳлымъ		бѳлою
Loc.	бѳломъ		бѳлой
<i>Plural.</i>			
Nom.	бѳлые	бѳлыя	бѳлыя
Acc.	N. or G.	бѳлыя	N. or G.
Gen.	бѳлыхъ		
Dat.	бѳлымъ		
Instr.	бѳлыми		
Loc.	бѳлыхъ		

бѳль, бѳла, бѳло, бѳлы white.



	<i>Singular.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom.	прямóй	прямóе	прямáя
Acc.	N. or G.	прямóе	прямúю
Gen.	прямóю		прямóй
Dat.	прямóму		прямóй
Instr.	прямóмъ		прямóю
Loc.	прямóмъ		прямóй

	<i>Plural.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom.	прямé	прямíя	прямíя
Acc.	N. or G.	прямíя	N. or G.
Gen.	прямíхъ		
Dat.	прямíмъ		
Instr.	прямíми		
Loc.	прямíхъ		

прямъ, прямá, прямо, прáмы upright.

	<i>Singular.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom.	сíній	сíнее	сíняя
Acc.	N. or G.	сíнее	сíнюю
Gen.	сíнюю		сíней
Dat.	сíнему		сíней
Instr.	сíнимъ		сíнею
Loc.	сíнемъ		сíней

	<i>Plural.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom.	сíние	сíнія	сíнія
Acc.	N. or G.	сíнія	N. or G.
Gen.	сíнихъ		
Dat.	сíнимъ		
Instr.	сíними		
Loc.	сíнихъ		

сивъ, сивá, сíне, сíни blue

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáній	барáнье	барáнья
Acc.	N. or G.	барáнье	барáнью
Gen.	барáньлю		барáньей
Dat.	барáньему		барáньей
Instr.	барáньимъ		барáньєю
Loc.	барáньемъ		барáньей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáньи	барáньи	барáньи
Acc.	N. or G.	барáньи	N. or G.
Gen.	барáньихъ		
Dat.	барáньимъ		
Instr.	барáньими		
Loc.	барáньихъ		

барáній, барáнья, барáнье, барáньи of a ram [v. § 34 (3)].

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	велі́кій	велі́кое	велі́кая
Acc.	N. or G.	велі́кое	велі́кую
Gen.	велі́каго		велі́кой
Dat.	велі́кому		велі́кой
Instr.	велі́кимъ		велі́кою
Loc.	велі́комъ		велі́кой

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	велі́кіе	велі́кія	
Acc.	N. or G.	велі́кія	N. or G.
Gen.	велі́кихъ		
Dat.	велі́кимъ		
Instr.	велі́кими		
Loc.	велі́кихъ		

велі́къ, великá, великó, великі́ great.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большо́й	большо́е	больша́я
Acc.	N. or G.	большо́е	большу́ю
Gen.	большо́ю		большо́й
Dat.	большо́му		большо́й
Instr.	большу́мъ		большо́ю
Loc.	большо́мъ		большо́й

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	больші́е	больші́я	
Acc.	N. or G.	больші́я	N. or G.
Gen.		больші́хъ	
Dat.		больші́мъ	
Instr.		больші́ми	
Loc.		больші́хъ	

Not used predicatively. большо́й, big, large.  
Thus: чужо́й, чужь, чу́же, чужа́, чу́жи strange.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣ́жій	свѣ́жее	свѣ́жая
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣ́жее	свѣ́жую
Gen.	свѣ́жаго*		свѣ́жей
Dat.	свѣ́жему		свѣ́жей
Instr.	свѣ́жимъ		свѣ́жею
Loc.	свѣ́жемъ		свѣ́жей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣ́жие	свѣ́жія	
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣ́жія	N. or G.
Gen.		свѣ́жихъ	
Dat.		свѣ́жимъ	
Instr.		свѣ́жими	
Loc.		свѣ́жихъ	

свѣ́жъ, свѣ́жа́, свѣ́жо́, свѣ́жи́ fresh. Thus: хоро́шій, хоро́шь, хоро́шо́, хоро́ша́, хоро́ші́ excellent.

\* Sounded svézivə.

## § 36. THE FORMATION OF THE PREDICATIVES.

Consult § 32 regarding the "insertion" of *o* and *e* to avoid an accumulation of final consonants.

(1) The following determinative adjectives have *no special* predicative form, and predicatively the full form must be used:—

- (a) All adjectives in *-скій*, e.g. *англійскій* English, *французскій* French, *русскій* Russian, *городскоі* municipal, etc.
- (β) *большой* big (physically): *-великъ* is used, e.g. *этотъ мужъ великъ* this man is tall; but *этотъ домъ большой*, this house is big.
- (γ) Adjectives denoting materials in *-янный*, e.g. *деревянный* wooden, *серебрянный* silver, etc., and the descriptive adjectives, such as *бараний* of a ram, v. § 34 (3).

(2) The following adjectives are *only* used in the predicative form: *радъ* glad, *гораздъ* skilful.

e.g. *я очень радъ* I am very glad, *она на всё горазда* she is clever in everything.

(3) *Possessives* [v. § 34 (2)] are *only* declined with the simple forms.

Possessives in *-овъ* never shift their accent.

Possessives in *-инъ* are thus accented: *сестринъ*, *сестрина*, *сестрино*, *сестрины*, *as predicatives*.

(4) All other adjectives have both forms, and the predicative has to be deduced from the determinative.

In polysyllabic derivative adjectives there is generally no change of accent.

e.g. мѹжественный masculine, мѹжественъ, мѹжественна, мѹжественно

But in simpler original adjectives there is practically no rule but experience. A few instances may be given.

e.g. (i) нѹвый new, новъ, новá, нѹво, нѹвы

Thus, too, бѹдръ gay, бѹстръ swift, великъ big, гордъ proud, твердъ hard, тихъ still, толстъ fat, старъ old, цѣль whole, чистъ clean. [v. § 32, II.]

Thus, too:—

тѣмный dark, тѣмень, темна́, темно́, темны́  
красный red, красенъ, красна́, красно́, красны́  
тѣплый hot, тѣпель, тепла́, тепло́, теплы́  
чѣрный black, чѣренъ, черна́, черно́, черны́

(ii) го́лый naked, голъ, гола́, голо́, голы́

Thus, too, высѹкъ lofty, далѣкъ far, тяжѣль heavy, бѣлый white, ширѹкъ far.

e.g. далѣкій, далѣкъ, далека́, далеко́, далѣки

(iii) во́льный free, волѣнь, вольна́, вольно́, вольны́

Thus, too, лѣгкий light (in weight), лѣгокъ, легка́, легкѹ́, легки́; си́льный powerful, ўмный sensible.

(iv) сѹхой dry, сѹха́, сѹхо́, сѹхи́

Thus, too, бѹсь barefooted, глухъ deaf, гниль foul, дѹрогъ dear, живъ alive, мѹлодь young, нагъ naked, нѣмъ dumb, плохъ poorly, слѣпъ blind, хромъ lame, etc.; бо́льной sick, бо́ленъ, бо́льна́, бо́льно́, бо́льны́; честной́ or чѣстный honest, чѣстенъ, честна́, чѣство́, чѣстны́.



§ 37. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Formation.*

(1) The Russian adjective has two degrees of comparison, comparative and superlative.

The comparative is in two forms: uninflected, e.g. *бóльше радъ*, from *радъ* glad; inflected, e.g. *глубже* deeper, from *глубокій*.

The inflected comparative has a predicative and determinative form, e.g. *бѣлѣе, бѣлѣйшій* whiter.

It is formed from the positive in two ways—by adding *-ѣе, -ѣйшій* to the stem, the accent generally shifting to the termination; or by adding *-е, -ѣшій* to the stem, the accent remaining on the radical syllable.

*-ѣе, -ѣйшій*, has become the *regular* form.

When adding either termination, *-ѣе* or *-е*, the rules for the mutation of consonants [v. § 5] must be strictly observed, and should be re-perused before the student proceeds any further with this section. In addition, he should remember [v. § 2 (3)] that in older Russian *ѣ* had a value approximating to *я*, and therefore, just as *к, г, х + я* in modern Russian make *ча, жа, ша*, so, too, in the comparatives *к, г, х + -ѣе, -ѣйшій*, make *чайшій, жайшій, шайшій*.

Similarly, *ск* or *ст + -ѣйшій* or *-е* make *-ще, -щайшій*, e.g. *чистый* pure, *чище, чищайшій*; *плоскій* flat, *плосчайшій*.

(2) No inflections for the superlative exist.

The comparative form is used, or the positive with suitable pronouns or adverbs. So, too, “beautiful,” “content” in English have no inflected degrees of comparison.

In some cases, where the shorter comparative is used, the longer form is reserved as a superlative.

e.g. **высо́кій** high, **вы́ше**, **вы́шій**; superlative **высоча́йшій**.

(3) The substitutes for the superlative are :—

(a) The prefixing of **наи-** to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Вотъ наи-лучшій примѣръ.**

This is the best example.

**Это наи-мѣньшая сума.**

This is the least sum.

(β) The prefixing of **самый**, self, to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Это самая интересная книга изъ всѣхъ мною прочитанныхъ.**

This is the most interesting book of those I have read.

**Нашъ домъ самый красивый въ деревнѣ.**

Our home is the prettiest in the village.

(γ) The addition of a form of **весь**, all, to the comparative, either **всего́** or **всѣхъ**.

e.g. **Эта книга интереснѣе всѣхъ которыя я прочиталъ.**

This book is the most interesting of any I have read.

**Вашъ совѣтъ полезнѣе всѣхъ.**

Your advice is the best.

- (δ) The absolute superlative, as in English, is indicated by the positive with such words as *очень* very, etc.

e.g. *Обѣдъ былъ очень вкусенъ.*

The dinner was very tasty.

- (ε) The superlative also can be formed by using—  
*въ высшей стѣпени* in the highest degree.

e.g. *Онъ въ высшей стѣпени великодушенъ.*

He is most generous.

§ 38. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Rules.*

I. The uninflected form, i.e. with *болѣе* more, is used:—

(a) With adjectives like *радъ* glad.

(β) At discretion with lengthy adjectives, e.g. *болѣе глубокий* deeper.

(γ) When there is a comparison of two adjectives.

e.g. *Рѣка Москвѣ болѣе широка нежели глубока.*

The river Moscow is broader than it is deep.

(δ) With adjectives (such as participles, derivative words, etc.), which it would be inconvenient to lengthen any more.

e.g. *Никогда не видѣла своего мужа болѣе оскорбленнымъ.*

She had never seen her husband more grieved.

*У него болѣе живой умъ.*

He has a keener mind.

(ε) Adjectives ending in *-скій*, *-ско́й*.

II. Only four adjectives have a simple inflected superlative.

e.g. низкій	low	нижáйшій
высокій	high	высочáйшій
глубо́кій	deep	глубочáйшій
мáлый	small	малéйшій
		(better най-мéньше)

III. Adjectives in -сьй, -жій, -зйй, -чій, and many in -кій, -гій, have no *declinable* comparative.

e.g. лы́сый	bald	лысѣ́е
свѣ́жій	fresh	свѣжѣ́е
горя́чій	warm	горячѣ́е

The reason probably is that where the regular form -ѣ, -ѣйшій is used, the combination of sibilants would be too heavy, e.g. лышáйшій, свѣжáйшій, горячáйшій, and the want is supplied in other ways; *v.* next subdivision.

IV. The indeclinable comparative with the prefix по- can be used in concord with a noun.

e.g. Я купилъ шляпу побóльше.  
I have bought a larger hat.

When the object of comparison is stated, the prefix по- has a diminutive sense.

e.g. Ва́ша ло́шадь по-быстрѣ́е Ива́новой.  
Your horse is a little quicker than that of Iván.

V. There are two methods of translating "than":—

(1) The use of *чѣмъ*, or rarely *нежели*: when a phrase follows the comparison.

e.g. *Этотъ урокъ легче чѣмъ (нежели) мы думали.*  
This lesson is easier than we thought.

(2) When the object of comparison is a noun, the noun may be in the genitive.

e.g. *Юрійъ умнѣе своего брата Кузьмы.*  
George is more sensible than his brother  
*Кузьма.*

### § 39. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

#### *Examples.*

I. The regular form of comparison is *-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій*, predicative indeclinable and declinable.

e.g. *любезный* amiable, *любезнѣе*, *любезнѣйшій*  
*-ѣе* is often abbreviated to *-ѣи*.

When the positive cannot in *any* part of its declension throw the accent on to the ending, the original accentuation is retained.

e.g. *справедливый* just, *справедливѣе*, *справедливѣйшій*

II. Another very common form is *-е*, *-ѣшій*, the adjective retaining its original accent.

This is nearly always used when the positive drops a suffix, e.g. *-ный*, *-кій*, and the comparative termination is attached to the root.



With a very few adjectives the predicative neuter -ше, of the declinable form -ьшии, is used alternatively with -е.

(a) Where the suffix of the positive is retained:—

e.g.	крѣпкій	powerful	крѣпче	крѣпчайшій
	лёгкій	light (in weight)	лёгче	легчайшій
	мѣлкій	small	мѣльче	мельчайшій
	бойкій	brisk	бойчѣе (a modern form)	
	ловкій	clever	ловчѣе	
	горькій	bitter	горше	

(b) Where the suffix of the positive is dropped in the undeclined comparative, but generally retained in the determinative:—

e.g.	высокій	high	выше	вѣсшій*	высочайшій
	глубо́кій	deep	глуб́же		глубочайшій
	низкій	low	ни́же	ни́зшій	нижайшій
	позднѣй*	late	позже*		позднѣ́йшій
	близкій	near	бли́же		ближайшій
	узкій	narrow	у́же		
	рѣдкій	rare	рѣ́же		рѣдчайшій
	сла́дкій	sweet	сла́ще†		сладчайшій
	крóткій	gentle	[крóче]‡		кротчайшій
	корóткій	short	корóче		кратчайшій
	тóнкій	thin	тóвьше		тончайшій
	широ́кій	broad	ши́ре		широчайшій
	далё́кій	far	да́льше		дальнѣ́йшій

\* V. § 4 (7) and (9).

† A Church Slav mutation from ть.

‡ More usually бо́лье крóткій.

(c) When the positive is not altered, there being no suffix :—

e.g. твёрдый	hard	твёрже	твёрдѣйшій
богатый	rich	{ богаче богатѣе }	богатѣйшій
худой	bad, lean	{ хуже (bad) худѣе (lean) }	худшій худѣйшій
плоскій	flat	плосче	
тихий	quiet	тише	тишайшій
строгий	stern	строже	строжайшій
дорогой	dear	дороже	дражайшій
молодой	young	моложе	младшій
старый	old	старше	старшій
крутой	steep	круче	крутѣйшій
дешёвый	cheap	дешевле	
пустой	{ desolate empty }	пуще пустѣе	пущій пустѣйшій
чистый	clean	чище	чистѣйшій

It will be observed that in modern Russian the mutations mostly only occur in the uninflected form of the comparative.

Note, too—

дóлгий long, дóльше (irregular, due to analogy of бóльше)  
далёкий far, дáльше *or* дáлѣе, дальнѣйшій (from дáльный)  
рáно (adverb) early, рáньше *or* рáнѣе

With these few exceptions the comparison of the adjective is regular; and all derivative adjectives, e.g. знаменитый famous, proceed in accordance with the rule, знаменитѣе, знаменитѣйшій.

So, too, сердитый angry.

The inflected comparative of such words is rarely used; the superlative replaced, as stated in § 37 (3).

III. The following adjectives have no positive:—

e.g. *лучше, лучший* better; *меньше* less; *меньше, меньший* smaller; *больше* more; *больше, больший* bigger.

*Observe* the distinction:—

<i>меньшой</i> junior	<i>большой</i> big
<i>меньший</i> smaller	<i>больший</i> bigger

*Хороший* and *добрый* are used as positives for *лучше*; but *добрѣ, добрый* also exist; also *малый* as a positive for *меньше*; and *великий* and *большой* for *больше, больше*.

## THE PRONOUN.

### § 40 (1). PRELIMINARY REMARKS ON THE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns in Russian present very little difficulty.

*Observe* (1) in the pronouns the genitive in -го is written -ого, -его, and pronounced and accented *аво, ево*. The dative in -му is also oxytone.

(2) Pronominal adjectives (such as *который, такой*) are declined exactly like ordinary adjectives [v. § 35 (2)].

(3) It will be observed that pronouns, though they are hard stems, take a *soft* plural, e.g. *самъ* self, *сами*.

The reason of this is that in Old Russian the nominative and accusative plural masculine were *и* and *ы*. In Russian the old feminine plural forms in *ы* have superseded the masculine; but the same survival of the old nominative is found in the old participles in -лъ, now used as the past tense, e.g. *былъ, были*.

## § 40 (2). TABLE OF RUSSIAN PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

Interrogative	кто who?	что what?	кой* which?	чей whose?	какъ how?	гдѣ where?	куда whither?	откуда whence?	какой what sort?	когда when?	почему† why?	сколько how much?
Relative	кто	что	кой*	чей	какъ якъ*	гдѣ	куда	откуда	какой	когда	почему	сколько
Demonstrative (remote)	тотъ	то	свой† его ея§	его ея§ ихъ	такъ	тамъ	туда	оттуда	такой таковой	тогда	потому	столько
Demonstrative (near)	этотъ	это			этакъ	здѣсь			этакій (эдакій)			
Demonstrative (remote)	оный	оно										
Demonstrative (near)	сей	сіе сѣ			сякъ*		сюда	отсюда отсюду				
Universals	каждый every весь all всякій everyone	всѣ			всѣ таки anyway	вездѣ повсюду every- where	сюда	отсюда отсюду	всякій every	всегда always		

Personal												
1st per. sing.	я	мои										
2nd "	ты	твой										
3rd "	онъ она оно	его ея свой †										
1st plur.	мы	нашъ										
2nd "	вы	вашъ										
3rd "	они ¶ онъ ¶	ихъ ** свой †										
Reflexive	себя †											
Indefinite	нѣкто somebody однѣ	нѣкій a certain	кто-что	куда-то куда-нибудь	откуда-то	нѣ- который some	нѣ- какой* какой- нибудь	нѣ- когда some- time	нѣ- сколько			
Negative	никто	ничего	ничего	никуда	ни- откуда		никакой	никогда	нисколько			
Identity	самъ самый self тотъ-же этотъ-же the same	такъ-же этакъ-же же		туда-же туда-же туда-же	оттуда-же оттуда-же оттуда-же		такой-же этакой-же же	тогда-же				
Difference	другой иной инойто прочіе	иначе иначе		иначе иначе			иначе иначе иначе	иногда				

\* Obsolete. † Or with any suitable preposition, e.g. причѣвъ. ‡ Reflexive for all persons. § Genitives, cf. Latin *emus*.

¶ только, like Latin *tantum*, means "only." ¶ Both sounded onі.



## § 41. EXAMPLES OF THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative* (singular and plural).

N. V.	кто (khtó)	for persons	что (štó)	for things
Acc.	кого (kavó)	„ „	что	„ „
Gen.	кого́	„ „	чего́ (čivó)	„ „
Dat.	кому́	„ „	чему́	„ „
Instr.	ке́мъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „
Loc.	комъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „

ко́тoрый (which of several?) and ка́ко́й (of what sort?) are declined adjectivally.

## ко́й which?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem. <sup>o</sup>	All genders.
Nom.	ко́й	ко́е	ко́я	ко́и
Acc.	N. or G.	ко́е	ко́ю	N. or G.
Gen.	ко́его*		ко́ей	ко́ихъ
Dat.	ко́ему		ко́ей	ко́имъ
Instr.	ко́имъ		ко́ею	ко́ими
Loc.	ко́емъ		ко́ей	ко́ихъ

## че́й whose?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	че́й	че́ё	че́я	че́и
Acc.	N. or G.	че́ё	че́ю	N. or G.
Gen.	че́его́ (čivó)		че́ей	че́ихъ
Dat.	че́ему́		че́ей	че́имъ
Instr.	че́имъ		че́ею	че́ими
Loc.	че́емъ		че́ей	че́ихъ

\* Sounded kóivā.

*Remarks.*—(1) кой is practically disused except in poetry, and a few proverbs.

(2) сколько is the only other declinable interrogative form.

Nom. Voc. Acc.	ско́лько
Gen. Loc.	ско́лькихъ
Dat.	ско́лькимъ
Instr.	ско́лькими

столько is similarly declined.

*Observe.*—In the nominative and accusative сколько is a noun governing the genitive plural; in other cases an adjective.

e.g. Ско́лько книгъ вы нашли?

How many books have you found?

Я самъ не знаю́ сколько́ими страна́ми я владѣю.

I do not myself know of how many countries

I am the master.

## II. *Relatives.*

These forms are now identical with the interrogatives. But, except in proverbs and poetry, кто and что are disused, кото́рый replacing them as relatives.

кто and что are scarcely ever used in strict apposition.

e.g. Я встрѣтилъ Ива́на кото́рому я обѣщаль мою ло́шадь.

I met John to whom I had promised my horse.

But they are commonly employed in distributive phrases *where the relative precedes*.

e.g. Кто бы ни появлялся у окна, въ тогó немедленно стрѣляли.

Whoever appeared at a window, (at him) they instantly shot.

Что бы вы ни дѣлали, вы этимъ горю не помóжете.  
Whatever you do, you will not remedy the sorrow thereby.

### III. *Demonstratives.*

#### тотъ that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	тотъ	то	та	тѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	то	ту	N. or G.
Gen.	тогó*		той	тѣхъ
Dat.	тому́		той	тѣмъ
Instr.	тѣмъ		тою	тѣми
Loc.	томъ		той	тѣхъ

#### этотъ this

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	этотъ	это	эта	эти
Acc.	N. or G.	это	эту	N. or G.
Gen.	этого		этой	этихъ
Dat.	этому		этой	этимъ
Instr.	этимъ		этою	этими
Loc.	этомъ		этой	этихъ

#### о́ный that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.				о́ные, о́ныя
Acc.	Like any hard adjective			о́ныхъ
Gen.	in -ый			о́ныхъ
Dat.				о́нымъ
Instr.				о́ными
Loc.				о́ныхъ

\* Sounded tavó.

## сей this

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	сей	сіе сѣ	сія	сіи
Acc.	N. or G.	сіе сѣ	сію	N. or G.
Gen.	сего*		сей	сихъ
Dat.	семѹ		сей	симъ
Instr.	симъ		сею	ими
Loc.	сѣмъ		сей	сихъ

Consult § 2 (3).

All the rest of the declinable pronouns on the demonstrative lines in the table follow\* the regular forms of the determinative adjectives without variation. e.g. тако́й, таково́й such as that; э́такий such as this, etc.

*Remarks.*—Practically only тотъ and э́тотъ are used in modern Russian. о́ный is found in legal documents, and сей in set phrases; e.g. се́годня (sívódn'ya) to-day, се́йчасъ in a minute, до́ сихъ поръ up to the present, сію́ ми́нѹту this very minute.

## IV. Universal Pronouns.

всі́кій of all sorts, and ка́ждый each, are declined like the determinative adjectives.

весь, all, drops the vowel "e" [v. § 32, I].

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	весь	всѣ	вся	всѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	всѣ	всю	N. or G.
Gen.	всего†		всей	всѣхъ
Dat.	всемѹ		всей	всѣмъ
Instr.	всѣмъ		всею	всѣми
Loc.	всѣмъ		всей	всѣхъ

\* Sounded sívó.

† Sounded fsívó.

V. *Personal Pronouns and Possessives.**Singular.*

	1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.			Reflexive.
			Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	
Nom.	я	ты	онъ	онó	она́	—
Acc.	меня́	тебя́	его́*		её	себя́
Gen.	меня́	тебя́	его́		ея́ †	себя́
Dat.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ему́		ей	себѣ́
Instr.	мно́ю	тобо́ю	имъ		ею́	собо́ю
	мно́й	тобо́й				собо́й
Loc.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ёмъ		ей	себѣ́

*Plural.*

	мы́	вы́	они́			As singular.
			они́	они́	они́ ‡	
Nom.	мы́	вы́	они́	они́	они́ ‡	As singular.
A.G.L.	насъ	васъ	ихъ			
Dat.	намъ	вамъ	имъ			
Instr.	на́ми	ва́ми	ими́			

The close similarity of some of these forms with the Latin pronouns will strike the student, e.g. *tibi* тебѣ́, *sibi* себѣ́.

Refer back to § 2 (3) and § 35 (1).

The possessives мой, твой, свой are declined like кой [v. § 41, I.], but accent the last syllable of the terminations uniformly; e.g. моё, мой, моёй, моего́, моему́, мой, etc.

нашъ our, and вашъ your, are declined alike, viz. :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	нашъ	на́ше	на́ша	на́ши
Acc.	N. or G.	на́ше	на́шу	N. or G.
Gen.	на́шего		на́шей	на́шихъ
Dat.	на́шему		на́шей	на́шимъ
Instr.	на́шимъ		на́шею	на́шими
Loc.	на́шемъ		на́шей	на́шихъ

\* Sounded yivó, yim, etc. † Commonly sounded like acc. её.

‡ Sounded like они́.



*Remarks.*—(1) *сво́й* and *себе́я* always refer back to the subject, *whatever the person*.

e.g. *Вы про́дали сво́ю честь.*

You have sold your honour.

The 3rd person pronouns when they are *not* reflexive are the genitives *его́, ея́, ихъ*.

e.g. *Мнѣ сказа́ли что купе́ць уже́ про́далъ его́ това́ры.*

They told me that the merchant has already sold his (somebody else's) goods.

In vulgar speech *ихни́й* is used for *ихъ* their.

When *себе́я* is attached to reflexive or passive verbs it takes the shortened form *ся* (*sounded* *ca*) after consonants, *сь* after vowels.

In older Russian all the pronouns had abbreviated enclitic forms [cf. French "moi," "me," etc.], viz. *мя, ты, ся* for *меня, тебя, себя*; *ми, ти, си* for *мнѣ, тебѣ, себѣ*. Of these forms only *ся* survives.

e.g. *Въ отча́яніи плѣнникъ заколо́лъ себе́я.*

In despair the prisoner stabbed himself (reflexive).

*Стыжу́сь э́того.*

I am ashamed of this (a reflexive verb).

*Ча́шка разби́лась.*

The cup was smashed (a passive).

(2) When *его́, ему́, ея́, еѣ, ихъ, имъ, ими, ей, ею, еѣмъ* are governed by *any* preposition, the letter *н* is prefixed to them.

e.g. *къ нему́* to him (sound *knemú*)

*въ ней* in her (sound *vńeí*)

*проти́въ нихъ* against them

у него́ with him [*chez lui*]  
 съ ними́ with them (sound sními)  
 близъ нея́ near her  
 на него́ against him (sound nańivó)  
 на немъ on it (sound nanyóm)

*But* его́ ра́ди for his sake (the preposition follows)  
 около́ его́ до́ма near his house  
 подъ ихъ вла́стью under their power, etc.

In these two instances *его́* and *ихъ* are possessive pronouns, not governed by the preposition.

(3) As in the nouns and adjectives, the instrumental singular feminine -ою, -ею, is often shortened to -оѣ, -еѣ.

(4) As the verbs mostly have full personal inflections, the pronouns are not added except for emphasis.

e.g. кля́немъ	we swear
слы́шу	I hear
понима́ешь?	do you understand?

## VI. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are formed, as will be seen in the table in various ways, by prefixes and suffixes; cf. English who, whoever, whoso, whosoever.

(1) Prefixing *нѣ́-* accented.

(2) Adding *нибу́дь* (i.e. as it may be, from *бу́дь*, imperative of *бы́ть*). [v. § 57, II. and § 82, III.]

(3) Prefixing *ко́е-* with a *distributive* sense.

e.g. гдѣ́-ни-бу́дь	somewhere or other
ко́е-гдѣ́	here and there
ко́е-кто́	various people (say)

*But* нѣ́которые some people (say)

(4) Adding *-то*. This suffix may be used with nouns as well, and gives an ironic or vague sense.

e.g. <i>человѣкъ-то</i>	that kind of man
<i>какой-то</i>	some sort or other
<i>кто-то</i>	somebody you know who

### VII. *The Negative Pronouns.*

These are formed by prefixing *ни-* *nor*.

When declined with prepositions the compound breaks up, and the preposition precedes the pronoun immediately.

e.g. <i>ни на когó</i>	against no one
<i>ни на какомъ мѣстѣ</i>	not on any place

In Russian a negative pronoun requires a negative verb, and, contrary to modern English practice, a double negative affirms the negative, and does not destroy it.

e.g. *Никогдá не было войны похóжей на тепѣрешнюю.*

Never was there a war like the present war.

*Я ни гдѣ не видѣлъ вашего брата.*

I could not see your brother anywhere.

But consult § 85.

### VIII. *The Pronouns of Identity.*

(1) By affixing *-же* to any demonstrative, identity is implied.

e.g. <i>этотъ-же</i>	the same as this
<i>такой-же</i>	the same sort as that

(2) The words *самъ* and *самый*.

*Самъ* means "self"; as in English, I myself я *самъ*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	самъ	самó	самá	сáми
Acc.	самогó	самó	самý†	N. or G.
Gen.	самогó*		самóй	самíхъ
Dat.	самомý		самóй	самímъ
Instr.	самímъ		самóю	самíми
Loc.	самómъ		самóй	самíхъ

As regards the soft plural сáми, cf. § 40 (1) (3). It has been carried all through.

Сáмый means "the same," and is declined like a regular determinative adjective.

For its use to form the superlative, v. § 37 (3).

### IX. *The Pronouns of Difference.*

The meanings of другóй and ино́й should be marked. другóй is "other," Latin *alius*, Greek ἄλλος, i.e. anything indeterminate, not what is being thought of. ино́й is "some other," Latin *ceteri*, Greek ἕτεροι, a more or less determinate object.

e.g. Нѣкоторые этого не мóгутъ понять.

Some cannot grasp this (fact).

Иные мóгутъ подуматъ что онъ сошѣлъ съ умá.

Some (*quidam*, certain people) may think he has gone mad.

Однѣ, однѣ́ [v. § 2 (3)], the plural of однѣ́ one, also means "some"; cf. English, the one says, the other . . .

So, too, иногдá sometimes, from time to time (definite)

нѣкогда sometimes (uncertain)

когда-то at some time or other (indeterminate)

прóчие, прóчія means "the rest," "the remainder."

In the singular it occurs in the phrase:—

въ прóчемъ for the rest (of the argument, etc.).

\* Sounded сэмэвѣ. † Or самоѣ.

Conjugations.

I.

Infn. in -ТЬ, -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ  
Pres. -У, -ЕШЬ ... -УТЬ

Nasal roots, infn. in -ЯТЬ

Sibilant roots, infn. in -СТЬ, -СІИ

Liquid roots, infn. in -ЕТЬ, -ЕЦЬ

Dental roots, infn. in -СТЬ, -СІИ

Roots in -В

Consonantal roots with suffixal "а" in infn. and past tense

III.

Infn. in -ТЬ, -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ, -ЪТЬ  
Pres. -Ю, -ЕШЬ, -СТЬ ... -ЮТЬ

ORIGINAL

No suffix before termination

Liquid roots -ОЮТЬ, -ОЮТЬ

Vocalic roots

а и у ъ ѣ њ

Verbal noun and past part. pass. in -Т

Originals in -ОВАТЬ, -ЕВАТЬ

Inceptives in -ТЬ

Suffixal infn. in -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ

DERIVATIVE

Derivatives in -ОВАТЬ, -ИРОВАТЬ

Iteratives in -АТЬ, -ЯТЬ

Iteratives in -ИВАТЬ, -ИВАТЬ

IV.

Infn. in -ТЬ, -ИТЬ  
Pres. -Ю, -ИШЬ, -ИТЬ ... -ЯТЬ

ANOMALOUS

Mixed conjugation

Obsolete

Same root Different roots  
cative etc. 3.АТЬ

DERIVATIVES in -ИТЬ, causatives and others

ORIGINALS in -АТЬ, -ИТЬ, -УТЬ

"Instantaneous" verbs transitive, intransitive, -ИТЬ in past tense stem in past tense past part. pass. in -Т

II.

Infn. in -ИТЬ  
Pres. -ИУ, -ИЕШЬ ... -ИУТЬ



## THE VERB.

## § 42 (2). PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

*The Parts of the Russian Verb.*

(i) The Russian verb presents little difficulty in comparison with many other modern languages. As was remarked in § 10, the forms of conjugation are very much reduced. They are:—

- (1) The infinitive.
- (2) A fully conjugated present tense, used in perfective verbs as the future.
- (3) A past tense consisting of an old participle in -лъ, with the personal pronouns, the copula, as usual in Russian, being omitted.
- (4) An imperative formed directly from the present tense.
- (5) A present “gerundive”\* active in -я, and present participle in -ущій or -ящій.
- (6) A past participle active in -вшій, and a past gerundive\* in -въ or -вшій.

These last-named forms are comparable with the predicatives and determinatives of the comparative, and originate in the same way. In older Russian ши was a feminine suffix of certain adjectives.

(7) A present participle passive in -емый, and

(8) A past participle passive in -тый or -ный.

The participles are all fully declined like ordinary adjectives.

(9) A verbal noun in -ие.

The functions of these parts are more fully discussed in the Syntax, § 88 and 89.

---

\* This so-called “gerundive” is merely an indeclinable participle, only used in agreement with the subject of the sentence.

*The Deficiencies and the "Aspects" (виды).*

(ii) Thus in Russian there is *no* conjunctive, only one conjugated tense, only one so-called past "tense" to express imperfects, preterites, perfects, pluperfects, etc. The future imperfective is formed by a compound tense, the infinitive with б $\acute{y}$ ду, one of the forms of б $\acute{y}$ ть to be.

The obvious deficiencies are supplemented by the *aspects* of the Russian verb.

This subject cannot at present be approached; it may be briefly explained. [v. §§ 58 and 92.]

In English, "I do," "I am doing," "I was doing," "I did," "I used to do," "I *do* do," "I have done," all define the nature of the act; e.g. "I am doing" is the continuous conjugation; "I used to do" the habitual; "I have done" marks the completion or perfective aspect, and so on.

If the reader knows any Latin, and can imagine Latin reduced to one tense, but converting the other tenses into separate conjugations with new infinitives to match, he will understand what has happened in Russian. Old Russian had a far fuller complement of tenses, *imperfect, aorist, perfect*, etc. In modern Russian "aspects" replace the tenses and fulfil entirely the same object.

If Latin had evolved an infinitive *labōrābāre*, from the imperfect *labōrābam*, to express the habitual aspect, or *labōrāvire* (from *labōrāvī*) to express the completion or perfective, such separate by-forms of the verb would very nearly correspond with the Russian aspects. Such desideratives as *ēsūrīre*, from *ēsūrus*, future participle of

*ēdō* to eat, and the inceptives in *-esco*, might indeed in the parlance of Slavonic grammar be termed "aspects."

To those who know a little Greek, the aspects will be even more familiar.

Thus the present forms *νοσεῖν* to be ill, *ἀποθνήσκω* to die, correspond to the imperfective *болѣть* or *хворать* and *умирать*; the aorist forms *ἐνόσησα*, *ἠοσῆσαι*, *ἀποθανεῖν*, to the perfective *оболе́ть*, *захвора́ть*, *умере́ть*, to be taken ill, to die. E.g. *онъ оболе́ль*, *захвора́ль*, *умере́ль*, *ἐνόσησε*; but *онъ болѣль*, he was ill some time, *ἐνόσει*; *онъ умира́ль*, he lay a-dying, *ἀπέθνησκε*.

And just as *νοσήσω*, etc., is a future, not a present, but has the aorist stem, so *захвораю*, *умру́* signify I shall fall ill, etc. E.g. *умре́тъ отъ чахотки* he will die of consumption.

### *How the Parts are Formed.*

(iii) To know every form of the Russian verb, it is only necessary to learn the infinitive and 3rd person singular present. The rest follow.

### *Verbs Original and Derivative.*

(iv) Verbs may be either original—i.e. unreferable to any simpler form—or derivative, from nouns or other verbs. E.g. in English "to fall," "to write," are original; "to book," "to tabulate" derivative (from the noun "book," and the Latin *tābula*, table). Or as in Latin, *dicere* to say, *iūdicāre*, from *iūdex*, a judge.

Derivatives, verbs which mostly represent complex ideas, greatly outnumber the primary verbs; in frequency of use they are less, as the simpler relations have to be constantly re-stated.

In Latin derivative verbs have a vocalic stem, e.g. *iūdicā-re*, *monē-re*, *audī-re*.\* So, too, in Russian дѹма thought, дѹмать to think; зелёный green, зеленѣть to become green; живѣ alive, жить to live ("original"), оживѣть to revive, from живѣй alive.

The derivative verbs being the more numerous, and the newest and easiest formations, tend to set the model, and become the "regular" verbs.

The primary verbs, being the most employed and the most worn down in daily use, also being drawn from more ancient sources, conserve obsolete forms, and are sometimes called "irregular"—arbitrarily and inaccurately. Actually Russian has next to no verbs that can be really termed anomalous.

Further, many "original" or "primary" verbs have consonantal stems or roots, e.g. Latin *reg-ere* to rule, *dic-ere* to say.

### § 43. THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The Russian infinitive ends in -ть and is preceded by the root in original verbs, by the stem in derivative verbs.

In some verbs -ті́ accented survived, e.g. нес-ті́ to carry.

---

\* Russian verbs in -ѣть, -ѣю, -ать, -аю, -пть, -ю may be compared with the Latin -eo, -[a]o, -io, whilst the Russian first conjugation consists of root-verbs, like the Latin third.

In some few guttural stems, the guttural and -ть coalesce into -чь, e.g. печь to bake, for пек-ть; жечь to burn, for жег-ть.

In some dental roots, the dental and -ть coalesce into -сть, e.g. вести to lead, for вед-ть; плести to pleat, for плет-ть.

In "original" vocalic stems -ть follows the root, e.g. зна-ть to know.

Sometimes a consonant is extruded, e.g. жить to live, for жив-ть.

All derivative stems are vocalic, e.g. желá-ть to wish.

#### § 44. THE FORMS DERIVED FROM THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The -ть termination must be removed, and the stem or root stripped.

- (1) By adding -нiе a verbal noun is formed; e.g. колебáть to rock, колебáнiе; вѣять to blow, вѣянiе.
- (2) By adding -лъ the past tense is formed; e.g. я колебáлъ I rocked.\*
- (3) By adding -я to the present stem the present "gerundive" дѣла-ть; e.g. дѣлая doing.

---

\* In consonantal stems this -лъ is dropped in the masculine singular, restored in the other inflections.

E.g. *тeрeть* (root *тър*) to rule, past tense *тѣръ*, *тѣрма* (fem.), etc.  
*лечь* (root *лг*) to lie down, past tense *лѣгъ*, *лѣгла* (fem.), etc.  
*речь* (root *рк*) to speak, past tense *рѣкъ*, *рѣкла* (fem.), etc.

But cf. for this last the Polish *rzékł*, and Čech *řekl*.



- (4) By adding -ущій, -ющій to the present stem the present participle; e.g. *имѣющій* possessing (*имѣ-ть*);\* -ящій is added with *derivative* verbs in -ить: *пис-а-ть*, *пишущій*.
- (5) By adding -въ or -вши the past gerundive; e.g. *пис-а-ть* to write, *писавъ*, *писавши*,† and by adding -вшій the past participle active; e.g. *веселѣ-ть* to enliven, *веселѣ-вшій*.
- (6) By adding -емый or -имый the present participle passive; e.g. *купѣ-ть* to buy, *купѣмый*; *зна-ть* to know, *знáемый*.

An easier rule is to form this from the 1st person plural present *купѣмъ*, *знáемъ*.

- (7) A perfect participle passive in т or п. т is only used in a very few verbs of certain types; e.g. *двѣнуть* to move, *двѣнутый*, *послать* to send, *пóсланный* sent.

*This participle is accented like the 2nd person singular present of variable verbs.*

All participles are fully declined as predicatives and determinatives.

Before proceeding to learn the verbs, the student must be sure he knows the phonetic rules in §§ 2, 5, 6, 8, 9.

It will be observed that all the forms derived from the infinitive are accented like the infinitive. There are scarcely any exceptions to this rule.

\* In older Russian the terminations were -учи, -ячи gerundive, -учій, -ячій participle. Some of the latter survive as adjectives, e.g. *могучій* powerful (*мочь*), *горячій* (*горѣть*) hot, *сидячій* sedentary. *Будучи* is still used as the gerundive present of *быть*; *будущій*, the regular form, means "future."

† In consonantal roots the termination is -шій, e.g. *нести* to carry, *несшій*, *нёсшій*.

§ 45. THE FORMATIONS FROM THE 1ST PERSON  
SINGULAR PRESENT.

The *imperative* is formed from the 1st person singular present by substituting й, ь or и for у or ю.

The addition of -те makes this imperative form plural.

The same -те added to the 1st person plural makes a *hortative* mood "let us do."

The accentuation is that of the present tense.

e.g. бѹду I shall be, бѹдь, бѹдѹте, бѹдем-те  
веселю I enliven, весели, веселите

There are a very few exceptions to this general rule, viz. бить to beat [v. § 52 (2) β], дать to give [v. § 57, III.], стоять to stand [v. § 52 (3)], бояться to fear [v. § 52 (3)], смѣяться to laugh [v. § 52 (3)], крыть\* to cover [v. § 52 (2) ε].

e.g. внемлю I take, внемли бью I beat, бей  
бою I fear, бой-ся моюсь I wash, мой-ся

§ 46. THE ACCENTUATION OF THE VERB.

I. All the forms derived from the infinitive [v. § 44] have a fixed accent, that of the infinitive.

II. Except in a very few verbs the imperative has the accent of the 1st person singular present.

III. Verbs which uniformly accent the termination or the stem in every part are said to have a fixed

---

\* The exception in verbs in -ть is apparent only: if the ы be taken as a contraction of -оѣ or у, i.e. as equivalent to -моѣть.

accent. Only a few derivatives and most of the original verbs have a variable accent.

IV. The only constant variations in the accentuation of the verb are in the present tense and the past participle passive, and forms derived from the present stem.

V. Every verb which has an infinitive of two syllables or more, and is not accented on the ultimate, has a fixed accent.

VI. In dissyllabic verbs accented on the ultimate in the infinitive, the accent *may* vary on certain inflections.

VII. A verb with a variable accent accents the infinitive and 1st person singular present alike, the 2nd and 3rd persons singular, the 1st and 2nd plural, on the penultimate; the 3rd person plural either on the ultimate or penultimate, generally the latter.

VIII. As a rule, the past participle passive has the secondary accent when the accent is variable.\*

IX. Russian verbs, original or derivative, with fixed or variable accents, are divided into four conjugations, which differ only very superficially and slightly.

e.g.            **вѣ́дѣть** to see (rule V.).

<b>вѣ́жу</b>	<b>вѣ́димъ</b>
<b>вѣ́дишь</b>	<b>вѣ́дите</b>
<b>вѣ́дитъ</b>	<b>вѣ́дятъ</b>

**пи́сать** to write (rule VI.).

<b>пи́шѹ</b>	<b>пи́шемъ</b>
<b>пи́шешь</b>	<b>пи́шете</b>
<b>пи́шетъ</b>	<b>пи́шутъ</b>

\* E.g. **воспита́ть** educate, **воспита́нный**; **писа́ть** write, **пи́шетъ**, **писа́нный**.

ска́зать to tell (rule VI.).

скажѹ	ска́жемъ
ска́жешь	ска́жете
ска́жетъ	ска́жутъ

нести́ to carry (invariable) (rule VI.).

несѹ	несѐмъ
несѐшь	несѐте [v. § 9 (7) (1)]
несѣтъ	несѹтъ

§ 47. EXAMPLES OF THE COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF TWO DERIVATIVE VERBS WITH FIXED ACCENTS.

<i>Infinitive :</i>	желá-ть to wish	вѣри-ть to believe
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	желáние	[вѣреніе]*
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	желáя	вѣря
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	желáющій	вѣрящій
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	желáвъ, желáвши	вѣривъ, вѣривши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	желáвшій	вѣрившій
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	желáемый	вѣримый†
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	желáнный	-вѣренный
<i>Present :</i>	я желáю	вѣрю
	ты желáешь	вѣришь
	онъ, она́, онó желáетъ	вѣритъ
	мы желáемъ	вѣримъ
	вы желáете	вѣрите
	они́, онѣ́ желáютъ	вѣрятъ
<i>Past :</i>	я, ты желáлъ, желáла	вѣрилъ, вѣрила
	онъ, она́, онó	{ желáлъ, желáла, желáло
		{ вѣрилъ, вѣрила, вѣрило
	мы, вы, они́, онѣ́	желáли, вѣрили

\* Replaced by вѣрованіе, from вѣровать.

† Rare.

*Future:*    бѹду    } желáть    бѹдемъ    } желáть  
              бѹдешь } вѣрить    бѹдете    } вѣрить  
              бѹдетъ }            бѹдутъ    }

*Imperative:*    2nd pers. sing. желáй    вѣрь  
                      2nd pers. pl. желáйте вѣрьте

*Unless specially mentioned, all the parts of the Russian verb are simply and regularly formed as in these two paradigms.*

## § 48. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

### *Some Phonetic Rules.*

Before entering on this section, reperuse § 5, § 6, § 8, § 9.

*Remember.*—Words in -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-, though now dissyllables, represent monosyllabic roots in -ре-, -ра-, -ле-, -ла-.

*Remember*—

г + е makes же    г + и makes жи    г + ю makes жу  
 And similarly with к and х (changing to ч and ш).

*Remember*—

т + ю makes in Russian чу, in Church Slavonic щу.

д + ю makes in Russian жу, in Church Slavonic жду.

т + я can make in Russian ча, and in Church Slavonic ща or remain.

т + е or и can make че, чи or remain.

д + е or и can make же, жи or remain.

д + я can make жа or remain.

When the dental remains, it is due to the influence of the written language.

*Remember*—к, г + -ть are changed to -чь; but т or д + тѣ to -стѣ, and the ending -стѣ is extended to other roots by false analogy.



*Remember*—з + я becomes жа or remains.  
 с + я becomes ша or remains.  
 с + ю becomes шу  
 з + ю becomes жу  
 ст + ю becomes шу

*Remember.*—The euphonic insertion of л after labial roots before ю, and -енный.

Before other soft vowels с, з and ст as a rule are merely softened in pronunciation, not changed in quality. [v. § 5 (4).]

#### § 49. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

At the head of § 42 there is printed a scheme of the four conjugations.

The first conjugation forms its present in -у, -ешь, -еть, -емъ, -ете, -уть, added directly on to the root, without any intermediate vowel.

It comprises the following classes:—

I. *Guttural Roots.*—Infinitive in -чь; e.g. печь to bake, лечь to lie down, мочь to be able.

e.g. печь to bake (root пек)	жечь to burn (root жг)
<i>Past part. act.:</i> пёкшій	жѣгшій
<i>Gerundive:</i> печá	жѣгши
<i>Present part. act.:</i> пекúщій	жгúщій
<i>Past part. pass.:</i> печённый	жжённый
<i>Present:</i> пекú    печёмъ	жгу    жжёмъ
печёшь    печёте	жжёшь    жжёте
печётъ    пекúтъ	жжётъ    жгутъ
<i>Past:</i> пёкъ, пеклá, пеклó, пеклí;	жѣгъ, жглá, жглó, жглí
<i>Imperative:</i> пекí; жи	

Similarly:—

речь to speak (root рек)—this verb is obsolete.  
 лечь to lie down (irregular present stem ля́гу,  
 ляжешь, ля́гутъ; but past лёгъ, легла́, легло́,  
 легли́); imperative лягъ  
 мочь to be able (root мог)

*Note.*—мочь makes могу́, можешь, можетъ, можемъ,  
 можете, могутъ; imperative моги́, etc.

Similarly:—

вечь to draw (root влек)  
 сѣчь to cut (root сѣк)  
 беречь to shelter (root берег, present берёгъ,  
 бережешь . . . берёгутъ, past берёгъ,  
 берёгла́, берёгло́, берёгли́)  
 стеречь to guard (root стерег, like беречь)  
 стричься to have the hair cut (root стриг)\*  
 течь to flow (root тек)  
 запрячь to yoke (root пряг: note the past  
 запрягъ, sounded прыжок, прыгла́, -ло́, -ли́)  
 волочь to drag (root волок)

*Practically all of these have a fixed accent on the termination.*

II. *Nasal Roots.*—Infinitive in -ять (-ать after ж, ч, etc.).

*Remember.*—The Russian я represents the Old Slav ѣ (French *aim, in, in faim, fin*); and the nasal lost in some forms is restored in fuller inflections; cf. время, времени. [v. § 2 (2).]

e.g. нача́ть to begin (root чьн); cf. imperfective  
 начинáть

---

\* Note past participle passive остри́женный.

The present gerundive and participle *начая* and *начая́ющий* do not exist, as the verb is perfective and has no present tense; only the past active participles *начавъ*, *начавшій*.

But note *past part. pass.* *начатый*, or *начатой*.

*Present* (with future meaning):—

начу́	начнё́мъ
начнё́шь	начнё́те
начнё́тъ	начну́тъ

*Past*: *началъ*, *начала́*, *начало*, *начали*

*Imperative*: *начни́*

*Verbs of this class take the past passive participle in т, and mostly throw the accent back on the past tense in -ль and the participle in т. Otherwise the accent is always on the termination.*

Such are:—*жать* (*жму*) to press (root *жьм*); *жать* (*жну*) to reap (root *жьн*), *чать* (root *чьн*); only used in compounds, e.g. *начина́ть* begin, *сочиня́ть* compose; *пя́ть* (*пну*, root *пнь*), mostly used in compounds, e.g. *распя́ть* to crucify.

*Verbs of this class take the verbal substantive in -tie (as also do the liquid roots, v. infra).*

e.g. *распя́tie* the crucifixion

*пони́tie* the meaning (of a passage)

There is one other such verb (with a nasal root) of great consequence, only used in compounds, viz. *-ять* (root *ем*, Latin *emere*) to take.

In compounds, as with the 3rd person pronoun [v. § 41, V. (2)], *н* is prefixed to the root.

e.g. наня́ть to hire, приня́ть accept, поня́ть to understand, заня́ть to occupy (oneself) or to lend, взять to take up, сня́ть to take away ; all in the imperfective, нанима́ть, принима́ть, etc. ; all having a past participle passive, на́няты, за́няты, etc.

The present restores the original root -емъ.

e.g. найму́, наймёшь, etc., пойму́, возьму́, займу́, etc.

There also exists a perfective present form in ёмлю, внёмлю, внёмлешь, conjugated like a verb with fixed accent of the third conjugation, but with an imperative accented внемли́.

### III. *Sibilant Roots.*

These are :—

- нести́ to carry (root нес)
- везти́ to drive (e.g. in a carriage) (root вез)
- грызть to gnaw (root грыз)
- лѣзть to climb (root лѣз)
- ползти́ to creep (root полз)
- пасты́ to graze (transitive) (root паст)

Example :—

*Infinitive* : везти́

*Gerundive present* : вези́

*Participle present* : везу́щій

*Gerundive past* : вѣзши

*Past participle passive* : везённы́й

*Verbal, derived from imperfective* : -воже́ние

*Present* : везу́, везёшь, etc.

*Past* : вѣзь, везла́, -ло́, -ли́

*Imperative* : вези́

*Notice.*—лѣзть has a present лѣзу, лѣзешь, etc., лѣзуть ; imperative лѣзь.

IV. *Roots in Liquids* : -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-.

- (1) e.g. терѣть to rub (root тѣр, imperf. тира́ть)  
 -мерѣть to die (root мѣр, imperf. -мира́ть)  
 перѣть to прог (root пѣр, imperf. пира́ть)

Example :—

*Infinitive* : терѣть

*Verbal* : трѣніе\*

*Past part. pass.* : тѣрѣть, like the roots in nasals

*Present gerundive act.* : трѣ́щии

*Present part. act.* : трѣ́щій

*Past part. act.* : тѣрѣ́тый

*Present* : тѣру, тѣрѣшь, тѣрѣть, тѣрѣ́мъ, тѣрѣ́те, тѣру́тъ

*Past* : тѣрѣ́лъ, тѣрѣ́ла, -ло, -ли

Like the roots in nasals, the verbal noun and past participle passive are formed with т, and the past tense and past participle passive throw the accent back on to the particle with which they are compounded.

e.g. ѹмерѣ́тъ, умерѣ́ла, ѹмерѣ́ло, ѹмерѣ́ли (умерѣ́ть)

So, too, по́дперѣ́тъ (but -пѣ́ръ) to прог.

- (2) борѣ́тъ to fight†                      по́лѣтъ to weed  
 порѣ́тъ to rend                              мо́лѣтъ to grind  
 ко́лѣтъ to pierce

ко́лѣтъ to pierce.

*Present part. act.* : ко́лющій

*Past part. act.* : ко́лѣвшій

*Verbal noun* : ко́лѣтье

*Past part. pass.* : ко́лѣтъ

*Present part. pass.* : ко́лемый

*Present* (following the third conjugation) : ко́лю, ко́лѣшь, ко́лѣтъ, ко́лемъ, ко́лѣте, ко́лютъ

*Past* : ко́лѣлъ, ко́лѣла, ко́лѣло, ко́лѣли

\* трѣ́ние is disused.

† Used with -ся, omitted in example.



These five verbs differ slightly from the verbs in -ерѣть, -елѣть.

(a) The present as in the third conjugation.

(β) A uniformly variable accent. [v. § 46.]

(γ) A regular vocalic past tense with fixed accent.

(δ) молѡть is *irregular* in forming its present: мелю́, мѣлешь, мѣлеть, мѣлемъ, мѣлете, мѣлють, as though from an infinitive мелѣть.

#### V. *Roots in Dentals.*

e.g. весті́ to lead (root вед)

гнесті́ to press (root гнет)

цвѣсті́ to bloom (root цвѣт), but v. § 9 (7) (3)

класть to lay (root клад)

красть to steal (root крад)

(краду́, кра́деный)

пасть to fall (root пад)

прять to spin (root пряд)

сѣсть to sit (сѣду, сѣдешь)

расті́ to grow (root раст: расту́, etc.; past tense росъ)

-чсть to read (root чьт)

идті́ to go (root ьд)

and by false analogy—

скрсть to scrape (root скреб: скребу́, скребёшь—скрёбъ)

грсть to row (root греб: гребу́, гребёшь, грёбъ)

клясть to swear (root клян: клянú, клянешь—кляль)

These verbs form the past in лъ added on to the vowel of the infinitive, the real root being disregarded.

e.g. вѣль, велá, велó, велі́

So гнѣль, цвѣль, клаль

Exceptions, гресть and скресть: грёбъ, гребл́а, гребл́и; скрёбъ, скребл́а, скребл́и; and раст́и (root раст), раст́у, растёшь, рос -ъ, -л́а, -л́о, -л́и.

честь and идт́и follow slightly different rules.

*Present*: ид́у (in compounds йду, e.g. найду I shall find, etc.), идёшь, идёт́ь, идёмъ, идёте, идут́ь

*Past* (from root шед): шёлъ, шл́а, шл́и

*Participles and gerundives*: идя́, идущ́ий, шед́ший

честь (only used in compounds, root чьт)

*Present*: -чту, -чтёшь, -чтут́ь

*Past*: -чёлъ, -чл́а, -чл́и

*Verbal noun*: -чтёние

*Participles and gerundives*: -чтя, -чтущ́ий, -чт́ивший, -чтённ́ый

сѣсть has a present сяду accented uniformly like лечь, лягу. красть accents the present крад́у, крадёшь, etc.

With these variations, one example will explain all these verbs.

красть to steal

*Present gerundive active*: крад́и

*Present participle active*: крад́ущий

*Past participle active*: крад́ший

*Past participle passive*: краденъ, краденн́ый

*Present*: крад́у, -ёшь, -ёт́ь, -ёмъ, -ёте, -ут́ь

*Imperative*: крад́и

All these forms use the real root of the verb in the present forms.

*Past*: крагъ, кра́ла, кра́ло, кра́ли

So, too, сѣлъ, сѣ́ла, сѣ́ло, сѣ́ли

For the accentuation of the past tense in its inflections, as a rule, monosyllables derived from verbs which accent the terminations throw the accent forward.

e.g. лѣгъ, легла́, легло́, легли́

паль\* (пасть) and сѣль (сѣсть) have a fixed accent, influenced by the derivative parts from verbs in -ать and -ѣть.

Forms such as вѣль, плѣль (вѣсти́, плести́) throw the accent forward like лѣгъ, росъ; so, too, кляль (клясть, клянú), краль (красть).

*Except* in original verbs, mostly monosyllabic, the past tense, or rather the participle in -л, never shifts the accent.

VI. *Roots in в.* These are three in number.

· жить to live

плыть to swim

слыть to have a reputation of (Greek κλύειν)

e.g. онъ слыветъ мúдрымъ he is thought wise.

One example illustrates all three.

жить to live

*Verbal noun* : житіе and житье

*Past participle passive* : -жѣтый

*Gerundive present active* : живя́

*Participle present active* : живúщій (but older form, used adjectivally, живúчій)

*Gerundive past active* : жѣвши, живь

*Participle past active* : жѣвшій

*Present* : живú, живёшь . . . живúтъ

*Past* : жилъ, жила́, жи́ло, жи́ли

\* Cf. Polish padl.

VII. *Consonantal roots with a suffical vowel a.*

- e.g. врать to speak at random, or lie  
 лгать to lie (tell falsehoods)  
 брать to take (iterative -бирать)  
 ждать to wait (iterative -ждать)  
 рвать to tear  
 спать to sleep  
 ржать to neigh  
 драть to tear (present деру́)  
 звать to call (present зову́)

## Examples:—

	рвать to tear	драть to tear
<i>Verbal noun:</i>	рва́ние	дра́нѣ *
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	рванъ	дранъ.
<i>Gerundive pres. act.:</i>	рви́	дери́
<i>Participle pres. act.:</i>	рву́щій	дери́щій
<i>Past part. act.:</i>	рва́вший	дра́вший
<i>Present:</i>	рву, рвѣшь, рвѣтъ, рвѣмъ, рвѣте, рвутъ	дери́, дери́шь, дери́тъ дери́мъ, дери́те, дери́тъ
<i>Past:</i>	рвалъ, рвала, рвало, рвали . . .	дралъ, драла, драло, драли
	So, too, лгать, лгу, лжѣшь, etc.	So, too, брать, беру́; звать, зову́

There are many similar forms in the third conjugation, monosyllabic and dissyllabic, e.g. знать to know, спать to sleep, писать to write. [v. § 51 (3).]

\* Irregular accentuation.

## § 50. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The first conjugation consists of consonantal roots attached directly to the terminations. This involves phonological difficulties, and slightly complicates the accentuation and appearance of the forms.

The second conjugation is composed of roots with a vocalic suffix, and thus greater apparent regularity is secured.

The marks of the second conjugation are: infinitive, -н<sup>у</sup>ть; present, -н<sup>у</sup>, -нешь, -неть, -нёмъ, -нете, -н<sup>у</sup>тъ, or, accented, -н<sup>у́</sup>, -н<sup>е́</sup>шь, -н<sup>е́</sup>тъ, -н<sup>е́</sup>мъ, -н<sup>е́</sup>те, -н<sup>у́</sup>тъ.

The present forms are therefore identical with those of the first conjugation, save for the prefixing of the н.

This conjugation falls under two main heads, which must be carefully distinguished.

I. Perfective verbs conserving the “н<sup>у</sup>” suffix throughout all the forms of verb, and mostly accented like the imperfective verb from which they are derived. These verbs [v. § 59, I. (2)] as perfectives have a peculiar meaning of instantaneity—of doing an action once and suddenly. The suffixal vowel of the imperfective verb is dropped, and sometimes the last consonant of the root as well, to avoid heavy combinations of the consonants.

e.g.	верт <sup>ѣ</sup> ть	to turn	верн <sup>у</sup> ть
	стег <sup>а</sup> ть	to quilt	стегн <sup>у</sup> ть
	порх <sup>а</sup> ть	to flutter	порхн <sup>у</sup> ть
	мах <sup>а</sup> ть	to wave	махн <sup>у</sup> ть
	двиг <sup>а</sup> ть	to move	двин <sup>у</sup> ть



e.g. дёргать	to pull	дёрнуть
трёгать	to touch	трёгнуть
л́опать	to split	л́опнуть
топ́ить	to sink	тону́ть* to drown
тя́гивать	to drag	тяну́ть* to pull
касáться	to concern	косну́ться
шепáть	to whisper	шепну́ть

There are some exceptions to this rule of accentuation.

e.g. гляд́ить	to look at	гляну́ть
кидáть	to leave	кину́ть
чёрпать	to take in water (of a ship)	черпну́ть
зй́ть	to gape	-зйну́ть
кричáть	to cry	крикну́ть

*Note*, however, compounds in гляну́ть have a *variable* accent.

e.g. загляну́ть, загляну́, заглянешь, etc.

## II. Verbs in -нуть, imperfective and intransitive.

In the past tense the simple root is used, with no suffixal vowel between the last consonant and *ль*, which latter, as in the first conjugation, drops in the masculine singular.

These verbs are distinguished from ordinary imperfectives by having the special *inchoative* meaning of "becoming."

---

\* With variable accent то́нешь, ты́нешь, тыну́тый.

These verbs are nearly all accented on the penultimate.

- e.g. слѣпнѹть to become blind  
 сохнѹть to become dry  
 чахнѹть to die gradually, or wither  
 стѣйнѹть to cool  
 гѣбнѹть (гѣбать) to decay  
 тихнѹть to become quiet

In this class a few verbs have the past tense in -нѹлъ.

- e.g. лѣпнѹть to adhere, лѣпнѹлъ; -снѹть (mostly used in compounds, e.g. заснѹть, проснѹть) to sleep, -снѹлъ (as the perfective of засыпать, etc.)

The present runs -снѹ, -снѣшь . . . снѹть.\*

### III. Examples of conjugation in both varieties.

	Perfective and Transitive.	Imperf. and Intrans.
	кѣнѹть to cast off	гѣбнѹть to decay
<i>Infinitive:</i>	кѣнѹть	гѣбнѹть
<i>Verbal noun:</i>	(кѣнѹтіе)	none
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	кѣнѹтый (in т not н)	none
<i>Present part. act.:</i>	none	гѣбнѹщій
<i>Present gerundive act.:</i>	none	гѣбнѹщи
<i>Past gerundive act.:</i>	кѣнѹвши	гѣбнѹвши
<i>Past part. act.:</i>	кѣнѹвшій	гѣбнѹвшій
<i>Present part. pass.:</i>	none	none
<i>Present:</i>	кѣнѹ, кѣнешь, кѣнетъ, кѣнемъ, кѣнете, кѣнѹть	гѣбнѹ, гѣбнешь, гѣбнетъ, гѣбнемъ, гѣбнете, гѣбнѹть
<i>Past:</i>	кѣнѹлъ, кѣнула, кѣнуло, кѣнули	гѣбъ, гѣбла гѣбло, гѣбли
<i>Imperative:</i>	кѣнь	гѣбъ

\* Cf. the noun сонъ, сна.

## § 51. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Preliminary.*

The characteristic of this conjugation is the present in -ю, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ.

This conjugation comprises a number of primary original verbs, mostly monosyllables, and vocalic roots (thereby distinct from those in the first conjugation); a few consonantal roots also exist.

It comprises the enormous and increasing number of regular derivatives in -ѣтъ; the derivative verbs in -ать and -ять, which is the commonest form, and the large class of verbs in -овать, -евать, together with the iteratives in -ывать, -ивать.

Thus, this conjugation perhaps embraces the majority of Russian verbs.

An example of a simple regular verb in -ать is to be found at § 47.

Verbs in -ѣтъ are precisely the same, e.g. зеленѣть to become green, the stem зеленѣ- being substituted for the stem желѣ-.

## § 52. THE ORIGINAL VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Those in which the terminations are directly affixed to the root.

(1) *Liquid roots in -олоть, -оротъ.*

These have been explained in § 49, IV. (2).

(2) *Vocalic roots*.—(a) Roots in а.

e.g. зна-ть to know

This is conjugated exactly like желать [v. § 47].

So, too, сия-ть to shine (сіяю).

(β) Roots in и.

e.g. бить to beat      лить to flow      шить to sew  
вить to wind      брить to shave      гнить to rot

All of these form the *past participle passive* in -ть.

e.g. бить, вить, лить, etc.

The *verbal nouns* are formed either in -итіе or -ѣніе.

e.g. битьѣ, бѣніе, гнѣніе, etc.

The present tense is formed:—

бью, бѣешь, бѣѣтъ, бѣемъ, бѣете, бѣють

So, too, шью, гнию, лью, вью, etc.

But брить, брѣю, брѣешь, брѣѣтъ, брѣемъ, брѣете, брѣють.

The other forms present no variance; e.g. бья, бьющій, бѣвшій, билъ (бѣла, бѣло, бѣли), бей (imperative).

[v. § 45.]

(γ) Roots in у.

e.g. дуть to blow      обуть to put on [shoes]

These are quite regular, the root being ду, обуй.

e.g. дую, дѣешь . . . дѣють, дуй  
дѣя, дѣющій, дѣвшій, дѣль

The verbal noun and past participle passive are in т, дутьѣ, обутьіе, дуть, обуть.

(δ) Roots in ѣ.

смѣть to dare\*      грѣть to warm  
успѣть to succeed

\* Not to be confused with смѣяться laugh. [v. § 52, I. (3).]

There are very few original verbs of this type; they are all regularly conjugated like the derivatives in -ѣть, or like желáю [v. § 47], substituting the root in ѣ for желá-

They are all accented throughout on the root-vowel ѣ; e.g. смѣю, грѣеть, успѣль. For -дѣть dress, v. § 57, II.

For пѣть, v. following sub-section (ε).

(ε) Verbs in -ыть.

[For бытъ to be, v. § 57, II. This verb is anomalous, forming its parts—as in nearly all Indo-European languages—out of several separate roots.]

e.g. крыть to cover, мыть to wash, выть to howl, рыть to dig; ныть to be injured, and пѣть to sing, which accents the termination; пою, поёшь, поётъ, поёмъ, поёте, поютъ.

ы fully accented is sounded almost as a diphthong *ii*, and крыть may be taken as an abbreviated form of крѣеть. One example will illustrate them all.

*Infinitive*: крыть

*Verbal noun*: крѣtie\*

*Past participle pass.*: крѣть\*

*Past participle act.*: крѣвшій

*Past gerundive act.*: крѣвъ, крѣвши

*Past*: крѣль, крѣла, крѣло, крѣли

*Present*: крѣю, крѣешь, крѣеть, крѣемъ, крѣете, крѣютъ

*Present participle pass.*: крѣемый

*Imperative*: крѣй, крѣйте

---

\* From §§ 49 I., II., IV., VI., § 50, § 52, I. (2) (β) (γ) (ε), it will be seen that most of the primitive root-verbs, consonantal and vocalic, have the past participle passive in т and not in н.



II. Verbs with an infinitive in -ать, -ять; but affixing the root directly on to the terminations of the present tense.

Of these verbs there is an immense number. Some instances can be given. Otherwise they are conjugated like желáю or дѣлаю.

		Present.	Accentuation.
та́ять	to thaw	та́ю	fixed
ла́ять	to bark	ла́ю	„
ка́пать	to trickle	ка́плю (ка́паю)	„
ма́зать	to anoint	ма́жу	„
рѣ́зать	to cut	рѣ́жу	„
чу́ять	to hear	чу́ю	„
прѣ́тать	to hide	прѣ́чу	„
вѣ́ять	to wave	вѣ́ю	„
ора́ть	to plough	ору́ю	„
надѣ́яться	to hope	надѣ́юсь	„
пла́кать	to weep	пла́чу	„
двѣ́гать	to move	двѣ́жу (двѣ́гаю)	„
писа́ть	to write	пи́шу, but пи́нешь, пи́шутъ, and пи́санный	variable
смѣ́яться	to laugh	смѣ́юсь	invariable
вяза́ть	to bind	вяза́ю	variable
дрема́ть	to sleep	дремлю́	„
шепта́ть	to whisper	шепчу́	„
сказа́ть	to say	скажу́	„
лепета́ть	to stammer	ленечу́	„

Nearly all the verbs of this class accented on the last syllable have a shifting accent, like that of писа́ть.

*Notice.*—(1) стена́ть, to groan, has mixed forms: стена́ю, стена́ешь, etc., or сто́ню, сто́нешь, etc.; past стена́ль or сто́наль.

- (2) колебáть to rock, колеблѹю or колебáю, колеблѣшь or колебáешь, etc.
- (3) слáть to send, шлѹю, шлѣшь, шлѣтъ, шлѣте, шлѹтъ (imperfective -сылáть).
- (4) слáть to spread, стелѹю, стелѣшь, etc., стелѹтъ; past слалъ, слалá, слáло, слáли.
- (5) дыхáть to breathe, дышѹю, дѣшь, дышѣтъ or дыхáю, дыхáешь, etc., in compounds.
- (6) страдáть to suffer, страждѹю or страдáю in the 1st person; otherwise страдáю, страдáешь, etc. страждѹю is a Church Slavonic form, the true Russian would have been стражду.

### § 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### *The Derivative Verbs.*

There are three forms of derivatives in the third conjugation:—

(1) With the infinitive in -ать or -ять, and stem in -а-, -я-, mostly derived from nouns, and conserving fixedly the accent of the noun. These are mostly transitive.

e.g. дѣло thing	дѣлáть to do
рабóта work	рабóтать to work
печáть printing	печáтать to print
любѣзникъ courtier	любѣзничáть to court

There are *very* few exceptions to this rule of the uniformity of accentuation of noun and verb.

e.g. хворóй ill	хворáть to be ill
ласкá affection	ласкáть to dandle

(2) With the infinitive in -ѣть *accented*, intransitive, and with an inceptive and imperfective meaning.

e.g. зеленѣть	to become green	(зелѣный)
богатѣть	to become rich	(богáтый)
желтѣть	to become yellow	(жѣлтый)
слабѣть	to become weak	(слабый)
мужать	to become a man	(мужь)

*Remember*—ж, ш, ч, щ + ѣ in Russian make жа, ша, ча, ша. [v. §§ 37 and 2 (3).]

These derivatives in -ѣть are all oxytone. Except:—

(a) A few words, e.g. угрюмый severe, угрюмѣть.

(β) In accordance with the same principle of conserving the accent of the noun or adjective all inceptives in -ѣть, from adjectives in -авый, -ивый, -овый, -атый, retain the adjectival accent.

e.g. кровáвѣть	to become bloody
мíлоствивѣть	to become merciful
космáтѣть	to become shaggy
безлúдѣть	to be depopulated (безь людѣй)
обезпáмятѣть	to lose memory (безь пáмяти)

*For full model of conjugation of these derivatives, all of which have a fixed accent, v. § 47, желáть.*

(3) I. *Derivatives in -овать, -евать, e.g. чúвствовать from чúство feeling.*

<i>Infinitive:</i>	чúствовать	горевáть
<i>Verbal noun:</i>	чúствование	горевáние
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	—	—
<i>„ger. and part. act.:</i>	чúствовавший, -ши	горевáвший, -ши
<i>Past:</i>	чúствовалъ	горевáлъ
<i>Present:</i>	чúствую, -ешь, etc.	горюю, -ешь, etc.
<i>Present part. act.:</i>	чúствующий	горюющий
<i>Present gerundive:</i>	чúствуя	горюя
<i>Imperative:</i>	чúствуй	горюй

The accent on these derivatives is fixed, mostly, on the syllable accented in the noun or adjective from which they are derived. But in the present, and those forms derived from it, -ов, -ев changes to -у, which is accented, when the infinitive is oxytone.

e.g. вѣра, вѣр<sup>о</sup>вать to believe  
 жѣрт<sup>в</sup>а, жѣрт<sup>в</sup>у, жѣрт<sup>в</sup>овать to sacrifice  
 бесѣ<sup>д</sup>а, бесѣ<sup>д</sup>овать to converse  
 вѣр<sup>в</sup>арь, вѣр<sup>в</sup>арств<sup>о</sup>вать to be barbarous  
 сущ<sup>е</sup>ств<sup>о</sup> а "being," сущ<sup>е</sup>ств<sup>о</sup>в<sup>а</sup>ть to exist  
 вой-н<sup>а</sup>, воев<sup>а</sup>ть to war

The foreign loan-words in -ировать. These if quadrisyllabic accent пров<sup>а</sup>ть; if pentasyllabic, or beyond, ир<sup>о</sup>вать.

e.g. акклиматизир<sup>о</sup>вать to acclimatize  
 [but хар<sup>а</sup>ктеризир<sup>о</sup>в<sup>а</sup>ть to characterize]  
 аплодир<sup>о</sup>вать to applaud  
 цивилизир<sup>о</sup>вать to civilize, etc.

But notice—здор<sup>о</sup>в<sup>о</sup>ый healthy, здор<sup>о</sup>в<sup>а</sup>ться; здор<sup>о</sup>в<sup>а</sup>юсь to greet. This is really a derivative from the adjective. [v. § 53 (1).]

II. There are a few *original* verbs in -овать, -евать, which really belong to § 52; but, as they are exactly like the derivatives, may be more conveniently treated here.

They all accent in the same way:—

e.g. ков <sup>а</sup> ть	to forge	ку <sup>ю</sup> , ку <sup>е</sup> шь	fixed accent
основ <sup>а</sup> ть	to found	осн <sup>ю</sup> ю, осн <sup>е</sup> шь	„ „
сов <sup>а</sup> ть	to thrust	су <sup>ю</sup>	„ „
клев <sup>а</sup> ть	to nibble	к <sup>лю</sup> ю	„ „
жев <sup>а</sup> ть	to chew	ж <sup>ю</sup> ю	„ „

(4) *Iteratives* in -áть, -я́ть.

There is one aspect of the Russian called iterative or frequentative, signifying habitual or repeated action.

One form of this is an inflection in -áть, -я́ть, -áю, -я́ю.

e.g. двíгать to move, perfective двíжу [v. § 52 (3)]

двигáть to move, iterative двигáю

начáть to begin, perfective начnú [v. § 49 (2)]

начинáть to begin, imperfective

Other examples will be given in the section on the aspects. [v. § 59 (4).]

The conjugation is regular, like желáю [v. § 47].

(5) *Iteratives* in -ывáть, -ивáть.

(a) Where the root of the verb is vocalic, in -вáть.

e.g. дать	to give	давáть
быть	to be	бывáть
стать	to become	-ставáть
обуться	to be shod (perf.)	обувáться

(β) Where the verb is dissyllabic, or the root consonantal in -ывáть, -ивáть, *with the accent on the root.*

e.g. писáть	to write	пíсывáть
звáть	to call	зóвывать [v. § 49, VII.] and -зывáть
торговáть	to trade	торгóвывать
игрáть	to play	игрывать
ходíть	to go	хáживáть
говорíть	to speak	говáривáть

For other instances, v. § 59, I. (4).

These forms are conjugated regularly with a fixed accent; e.g. бывáю, пíсывáю, говáривáю, like желáть [v. § 47].



*Observe.*—дава́ть (from дать) forms its present like кова́ть [v. § 53 (3) II.], даю́, даёшь, даётъ, etc. Similarly -става́ть has -стаю́, -стаёшь, etc., and -знава́ть (from знать to know), -знаю́, -знаёшь, etc.

## § 54. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

### *Preliminary.*

The fourth conjugation consists mainly of derivative verbs with fixed accentuation.

The infinitive is in -ѣть for a few very common original verbs, and in -ать, -ять in four others: гнать to drive, спать to sleep, сто́ять to be worth (connected with стать to stand), and бо́яться to fear.

Otherwise the infinitive is in -ить, and the present terminations -ю, -ишь, -итъ, -имъ, -ите, -ять are added *directly* to the root or stem, the thematic vowel и only occurring in the infinitive and forms thence derived. For a complete paradigm of the derivative verb, v. § 47, вѣ́рить, and cf. §§ 44 and 45.

The derivative verbs of the fourth conjugation are mostly transitive, and often causative.

e.g. сла́бъ weak, сла́бѣть to become weak, сла́бить to make weak

ста́ръ old, ста́рѣть to become old, ста́рить to make old

бога́тъ rich, бога́тѣть to become rich, бога́тить to enrich

ле́дяной (from лё́дь ice), ле́дѣть to freeze (intransitive), ле́дѣть to freeze (transitive)

When derived from verbs, forms in -ить are usually

the imperfectives of primitive verbs of the first conjugation.

e.g. нести́	to carry	нести́
везти́	to carry	вози́ть
вести́	to lead	води́ть
лечь	to lie	ложи́ть to lay лежа́ть to lie (intrans.)

Generally speaking, these derivative verbs accent the termination throughout; there are many exceptions, some of which are detailed in § 56.

### § 55. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

#### *Original Verbs.*

#### I. Verbs in -ать, -ять.

	гнать	стои́ть	спать
	to drive	to stand	to sleep
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	гна́ние	стои́ние	—
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	гна́нный	—	—
<i>Gerundive present :</i>	гна́я	стои́я	—
<i>Present part. :</i>	гна́ющий	стои́щий	спя́щий
<i>Gerundive past :</i>	гна́въ	стои́въ	—
	гна́вши	стои́вши	спя́вши
<i>Present :</i>	гна́ю	стои́ю	сплю́
	гна́ишь	стои́шь	спи́шь
	гна́ить	стои́тъ	спи́ть
	гна́имъ	стои́мъ	спи́мъ
	гна́ите	стои́те	спи́те
	гна́ять	стои́тъ	спя́ть
<i>Imperative :</i>	гна́й	стои́	спи́
<i>Past :</i>	гна́лъ	стои́лъ	спалъ
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	гна́мый	—	—

боя́ться, to fear, is conjugated like стои́ть; the imperative is бо́йся.

## II. Verbs in -ѢТЬ.

*Roots terminating in ш, ж, ч change Ѣ to а;*  
e.g. лежа́ть. Cf. § 37 and § 53 (2), and § 2 (3).

These verbs mostly have a fixed accent on the terminations.

e.g. гори́ть to burn, гори́ю, гори́шь . . . гори́тъ  
 шумѣ́ть to be noisy, шумлю́, шуми́шь, шумя́тъ  
 летѣ́ть to fly, лечу́, лежи́шь, лета́тъ  
 сидѣ́ть\* to sit, сижу́, сиди́шь, сидя́тъ  
 дрожа́ть to tremble, дрожу́, дрожи́шь, дрожа́тъ  
 крича́ть to cry, кричу́, кричи́шь, крича́тъ  
 лежа́ть to lie, лежу́, лежи́шь, лежа́тъ\*  
 стуча́ть to knock, стучу́, стуча́тъ  
 молча́ть\* to be silent, молчу́, молча́тъ  
 боли́тъ (impersonal), боли́тъ, боли́тъ  
 велѣ́ть† to command, велю́, вели́шь  
 глядя́тъ\* to look at, гляжу́, гляжи́шь, etc.

Some have a moveable accent.

e.g. смотре́ть to look at, смотре́ю, смотре́шь . . .  
 смотре́тъ, смотре́щий, -смотре́нный  
 терпе́ть to endure, терплю́, терпи́шь . . . терпе́тъ  
 (but терпи́мый, терпле́нный)  
 держа́ть to hold, держу́, держи́шь . . . держа́тъ  
 (past part. pass. держа́нный)

---

\* Present gerundive *сидя, лёжа, молча, глядя*.

† Takes the dative.

дыша́ть to breathe, дышú, ды́шишь, ды́шатъ  
(Also a secondary form, дыха́ть, дышú, ды́шешь,  
ды́шутъ in the third conjugation)

люби́ть to love, люблю́, люби́шь . . . любя́тъ,  
любя́щии, любя́щими

верту́ть, to turn, usually has a fixed accent on the termination ; верти́шь, верти́ть, вертя́тъ are also found.

висю́ть to hang (intransitive) has a fixed accent ; but in compounds accents the root, e.g. зави́сютъ.

A few are accented fixedly on the root.

e.g. слы́шать, слы́шу, слы́шатъ, etc., to hear

ви́дѣть, ви́жу, ви́дятъ to see

*As a rough guide* it may be stated that verbs of the fourth conjugation with the infinitive in -ѣть, if intransitive have a fixed accent, if transitive have a moveable accent.

*Note.*—плати́ть, to pay (плачу́, плати́шь, платя́тъ, пла́чевный), must be distinguished from пла́кать, пла́чу to weep ; плати́шь . . . платя́тъ, to pay, is sometimes written, and commonly sounded плати́шь . . . платя́тъ.

The past tense of this conjugation ends in -ѣлъ, -аъ, accented like the infinitive.

In this class the irregular verbs хотѣ́ть to wish, and бѣжа́ть to run, must be included. бѣжа́ть has two irregular forms, бѣгú I run, бѣгúтъ they run, and derivative forms. смотре́ть, to look, is also given in full, to illustrate a verb of the fourth conjugation with a moveable accent.

<i>Infinitive</i> :	хотѣ́тъ	смотре́тъ	бѣжа́тъ
<i>Past</i> :	хотѣ́лъ	смотре́лъ	бѣжа́лъ
<i>Past gerun.</i> :	хотѣ́въ, хотѣ́вши	смотре́въ	бѣжа́въ
		смотре́вши	бѣжа́вши
<i>Pres. gerun.</i> :	хотя́ [not used]	смотря́	бѣжа́
<i>Pres. part. act.</i> :	хотя́щій	смотря́щій	бѣгу́щій
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	хотѣ́вшій	смотре́вшій	бѣжа́вшій
<i>Past pt. pass.</i> :	—	[о]смотре́нный	—
<i>Present</i> :	я хочú	смотрю́	бѣгу́
	ты хочешь	смотришь	бѣжишь
	она, онъ хочетъ	смотритъ	бѣжитъ
	мы хотимъ	смотримъ	бѣжимъ
	вы хотите	смотрите	бѣжите
	они́, онѣ́ хотятъ	смотрятъ	бѣгутъ
<i>Pres. pt. pass.</i> :	хотимый	—	—
<i>Imperative</i> :	хоти́	смотри́	бѣги́

Most dissyllabic original verbs in -ить have a variable accent, e.g. учѣ́тъ to learn, учú, учишь; пуститъ to let go, пуцú, пустишь; the 1st person singular only is accented like the infinitive, e.g. пу́стятъ, слúжатъ (they serve). The present gerundive active, present participle active, and present participle passive are generally accented like the infinitive, e.g. любя́, любя́щій, любимый (люби́тъ to love).

The past participle passive is generally accented like the secondary accent of the present, e.g. хвата́тъ to seize, хвачú, хватишь, хваченный.

Some verbs have a fixed accent, e.g. прости́тъ to forgive, прощú, простишь, прощённый, etc.; but such are mostly derivative, e.g. даръ gift, даритъ to present, диво marvel, удивитъ to marvel.



## § 56. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Derivative Verbs.*

The infinitive *always* ends in -ить, and the accentuation is fixed; v. § 47 for an example.

As stated in § 54 these derivative verbs are mostly accented on the terminations.

e.g. from adjectives and nouns:—

чёрный	black	чернить	to blacken
пьяный	drunk	пьянить	to make drunk
хитрый	cunning	хитрить	{ to dodge to be cunning
мука*	torment	мучить	to torture
грусть	sorrow	грустить	to grieve

But those derived from verbs mostly have a variable accent, e.g. ставить (ставлю, ста́вишь), носить, возить, водить, будить (to place, carry, convey, lead, awaken), from стать, нести́, везти́, вести́, бдѣть, v. § 54.

But very many conserve the original accent, especially if the verb has more than two syllables.

e.g. споръ	dispute	спóрить	to dispute
ссóра	quarrel	ссóрить	to set at variance
сла́бый	weak	сла́бить	to weaken
ста́рый	old	ста́рить	to make old
кислый	acid	кислить	make acid
низъ	low down	ни́зить	to degrade
ни́щій	poor	ви́щать	to impoverish
вѣра	faith	вѣ́рить	to believe

---

\* Distinguish from мука́ flour: мучи́ть to flour.

*Trisyllabic* :—

ГОТОВЫЙ ready	ГОТОВИТЬ to make ready (past part. pass. ГОТОВЛЕННЫЙ)
ЭКОНОМЪ economical	ЭКОНОМИТЬ to economize (trans. and intrans.)

To this last principle that trisyllabic verbs retain the original accent there are many exceptions, especially in all adjectives and nouns denoting substance.

e.g. БОГАТЫЙ rich	БОГАТИТЬ to enrich
ВЕСЕЛЫЙ merry	ВЕСЕЛИТЬ enliven
ЗЕЛЁНЫЙ green	ЗЕЛЕНИТЬ to make green
ЗОЛОТО gold	ЗОЛОТИТЬ to gild (ЗОЛОЧЕННЫЙ)
ЛЁДЪ ice, icy	ЛЕДЕНИТЬ to freeze
ГОВОРЬ speech	ГОВОРИТЬ to say

### § 57. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

A few anomalous verbs remain over for discussion. They are *either* of mixed conjugations or obsolete forms.

#### I. *Mixed conjugations.*

(1) The same root throughout.

(a) РЕВѢТЬ, to roar, forms its present like a verb of the first conjugation, e.g. реву, ревьёшь . . . ревьётъ, and therefore all derivative forms such as реву́щий, ревьѣ́ (gerundive), etc.

(β) ХОТѢТЬ to wish [v. § 55, II.].

(γ) -ДѢТЬ (only used in compounds, одѣть to dress, etc.) and СТАТЬ, to stand, form their present in дѣву, дѣнешь; стану, станешь; and belong to the first conjugation.

- (δ) посѣтить to visit, обратѣть to direct, from the 1st person present in щ instead of ч; thus, посѣщѹ, посѣтѣшь; обрацѹ, обратѣшь.
- (ε) -шибѣть (only used in compounds, e.g. ошибѣться make a mistake, perfective; imperfective ошибѣться, ошибѣаюсь, etc.) forms its present as in the first conjugation, its past as in the intransitives of the second, e.g. ошибѹсь, ошибѣтсѣ . . . ошибѹтсѣ; past ошибѣсѣ, ошиблѣсѣ, ошиблѣлось, ошиблѣсѣ. The participles are ошибѣающѣйсѣ, ошибшѣйсѣ; gerundives, ошибѣаѣсѣ, ошибшѣсѣ.
- (ζ) Distinguish зрѣть, зрю, зрѣть [зрѣнный] to look at; and зрѣть to ripen, зрѣю, зрѣешь, etc.

## II. Using different roots.

E.g. in English "to be," "I was," "to go," "I went."

(1) идѣть forms its present from the root ид, its past from шед. e.g.

*Present*: идѹ, идѣшь . . . идѹтѣ

*Present part. and gerundive*: идѹщѣйсѣ, идѣ

*Past*: шѣлъ, шлѣ, шлѣо, шлѣи

*Past part. act. and gerundive*: шедшѣйсѣ, шедшѣи

(2) бѣть to be

*Verbal noun*: бѣтѣе

*Present*: естѣ; сѹтѣ

*Past*: бѣлъ, бѣлѣ, бѣлѣо, бѣлѣи

*Future*: бѹдѹ, бѹдѣшь, бѹдетѣ, бѹдемѣ, бѹдете, бѹдутѣ

*Future participle*: бѹдѹщѣйсѣ. But v. § 44 (4), footnote.

*Past participle*: бѣвшѣйсѣ

*Past gerundive*: бѣвшѣи от бѣвъ

*Imperative*: бѹдѣ, бѹдѣте

- (3) Ёхать, to drive, has as its present form ёду, ёдешь, ёдеть, ёдемь, ёдете, ёдутъ, and thence the gerundive ёдучи, the participle ёдущій, the imperative ёзжай or ёзди; but in the past ёхалъ, ёхавъ, etc.; ёзжать (iterative).

The present tense of быть is scarcely ever used. есть and суть only survive in definitions, and are then used for all the persons. E.g. Богъ есть истина God is the truth; otherwise, Пётръ очень мудръ Peter is very wise, ёто моё a то твоё this is mine and that is yours. [v. § 86.]

The compounds of быть are peculiar. The future tense is -буду, e.g. забыть to forget, забуду.

пробыть to stay (perfective), пробывать (imperfective)

избыть, избывать to lose or squander

выбыть, выбывать to retire, resign

добыть, добывать to earn

перебыть, перебивать to frequent

прибыть, прибывать to arrive or increase; прибыль (fem.) profit

отбыть, отбивать to depart or get rid of

убыть, убывать to decrease

### III. *Obsolete forms.*

(1) здать, to build, has a reduplicated present зѣзжу, зѣждешь, зѣждеть, зѣждемь, зѣждете, зѣждутъ; and thence зѣждущій, зѣждущи; and the imperative зѣжди (зѣждь). For the rest it is like зная.

(2) There are four verbs in "m," like the Latin *sum* and the Greek verbs in *μι*.

(α) **ВѢМЪ** I know (root **ВѢД\***).

This is entirely obsolete; but one form survives in the expression **Богъ вѣсть** God knows.

The derivatives are numerous, e.g. **ВѢДОМЫЙ** an acquaintance, **ВѢДОМОСТЬ** the gazette or the news.

The infinitive **ВѢСТЬ** is also a feminine noun, meaning "news"; the iterative form **ВѢДАТЬ** is in common use in compound verbs; **-ВѢДАТЬ** being the perfective and **-ВѢДЫВАТЬ** the imperfective; the old imperative **ВѢДЬ** survives as a conjunction, more or less equivalent to *voici*.

(β) **ЕСМЪ**, *v. antea* under **БЫТЬ**.

(γ) **ѢСТЬ** to eat (root **ѢД**).

*Present*: **ѢМЪ**, **ѢШЬ**, **Ѣстѣ**, † **Ѣдѹмѣ**, **Ѣдѹте**, **Ѣдѹтѣ**

*Imperative* (irregular): **Ѣшь**, **Ѣште**

*Past*: **Ѣлъ**, **Ѣла**, **Ѣло**, **Ѣли**

*Part. and gerundives*: **Ѣдѹ**, **Ѣдѹщій**, **Ѣвши**, **Ѣвшій**,  
**Ѣдѹмый**, **-Ѣденный**

(δ) **ДАТЬ** to give (perfective). The present form (perfective future):—

**дамъ**, **дашь**, **дастѣ**, **дадѹмъ**, **дадѹте**, **дадѹтъ**

The imperfective forms are supplied by **ДАВАТЬ**.

[v. § 53 (5).]

*Imperative*: **дай**

*Past*: **далъ**, **дала**, **дало**, **дали**

*Part. and gerundives*: **давши**, **давшій**, **данный**

\* Greek *οἶσα*, English "I wot."

† Cf. Latin *est* he is, *ēst* he eats; German *ist* and *isst*.



## § 58. THE ASPECTS OF THE VERBS.

*Preliminary.*

In § 42 (2) (ii) the “aspects” of the Russian verb were mentioned. They could not be adequately explained until the accident of the verb had been fully treated.

To recapitulate: the verb in early Russian had a present, imperfect and aorist (or preterite) indicative, and a compounded perfect and pluperfect like the English “I have read,” and the Latin *gavisus sum*. There were some few traces even of a future, but no conjunctive or other moods.

Russian discarded all the inflections save that of the present, and modified the stem or root to express the same tenses; e.g. я свистѣлъ I whistled, is “j'ai sifflé”; я свистнулъ is “je sifflai”; я свисталъ is “je sifflais,” I was whistling; я свистывалъ I used to whistle (now and then).

Each of these “aspects” has its conjugation; and, thus, those Russian verbs which have all the aspects possess nearly the same richness as the Greek verb with its present infinitive and participle, aorist forms, perfect forms, etc.

The perfective regards the action accomplished or to be accomplished, not the process of doing it.

e.g. Учить-ли вашъ мальчикъ свои уроки?

Does your boy learn his lessons (as a rule)?

Нѣтъ, но онъ ихъ выучитъ сегодня is the perfective; there can be no present to an aorist or preterite. The present form is used as a perfect contemplating the completion of the act. The answer is: "No, but he will learn them to-day."

The answer might proceed: и такъ бѣдетъ ходѣтъ въ школу съ понедѣльника (i.e. the imperfective future) "and so will go to school from Monday next." Or again, я бѣду стоѣтъ ежеднѣвно на однѣмъ и томъ же мѣстѣ I shall stand every day at the same spot. Стану can also be used as the auxiliary, but signifies rather "I will begin to."

e.g. Въ бѣдущемъ году ты станешь рабѣтъ въ конторѣ.

Next year you will start working at the office.

The primary division, which very nearly all Russian verbs have, is into imperfective and perfective. Some have further forms, derived from either or both in certain cases, from the imperfective.

The *abstract*, e.g. рыба плаваетъ бѣстро the fish swims quickly (as a habit), ѣтотъ пловецъ плывѣтъ ѣчень хорошѣ this swimmer is swimming very well (at this instant).

The *inceptive*, e.g. болѣтъ to fall ill, заболѣтъ to fall ill gradually. The *iterative* or *habitual*, only used colloquially and in the past tense; e.g. Ходите-ли вы чѣсто въ театрѣ? Нѣтъ, тепѣрь не хожу, но когда-то хаживалъ. Do you often go to the theatre? No, I don't now; once I used to go occasionally. From the perfective the perfective form in -нуть [v. § 50, I.] has been

in some verbs specialized into the "instantaneous" or "semelfactive" aspect, an act done on a single occasion.

e.g. **Запрещено́ стучать́ въ окно́.**

It is forbidden to knock at the window.

(Imperfective or iterative : стучать, стучу́.)

**Кто́ это́ тамъ стучи́тъ въ дверь?**

Who is that knocking at the door?

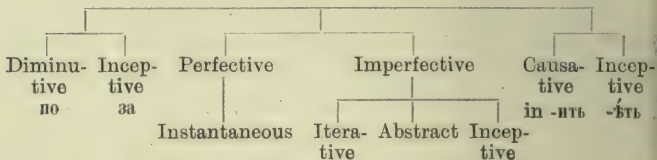
**Я не могъ войти́, такъ стукну́лъ.**

I could not get in, so I knocked.

Further, certain verbs derived from adjectives have causative and inceptive forms in -ить and -ѣть [v. § 53].

		Intrans.	Trans.	
e.g.	зелёный green	зеленѣть	зеленить	
	слабый weak	слабѣть	слабить etc.	

### Aspects.



Some verbs have no perfective. [v. § 59, IV.]

e.g. **предвидѣть** to foresee

**зависѣть** to depend

**содержать (содержитъ)** to contain

**принадлежать (-жѹ, -житъ)** to belong

**подлежать** to be subject to

**сожалѣть (-ѣю)** to regret

**предстоять (-стою)** to impend

**сочувствовать** to sympathize

**предчувствовать** to forebode

## § 59. THE FORMATION OF THE ASPECTS.

I. *From original verbs.*

## (1) First conjugation.

The simplest form of the un-compounded verb is imperfective.

e.g. печь to cook  
жечь to burn  
нести to carry, etc.

With these may be reckoned the primitives of the third and fourth conjugations.

e.g. слать шлю I send  
бить бью I beat  
спать сплю I sleep  
гвать гвою́ I drive

There are some exceptions :—

e.g. лечь лягу I shall lie down  
пасть паду́ I shall fall  
сѣсть сяду́ I shall sit down  
стать стану́ I shall stand  
дать дамъ I shall give

The perfectives of monosyllabic verbs are formed with prepositions, i.e. by compounding the verb.

The imperfectives of сѣсть, etc., are :—

сѣсть садиться  
лечь ложиться  
стать становиться (становлюсь, станóвится)  
дать давать [v. § 53 (5)]  
пасть падать, падаю́

But these verbs, *when un-compounded*, form iteratives out of the full root with an -ать suffix.

e.g. слать	to send	-сылать
брать	to take	-бирать
ждать	to wait	-ждать
драть	to tear	-дирать
звать	to call	-зывать
жечь	to burn	-жигать
тереть	to rub	-тирать
жать	to press	-жимать
жать	to reap	-жинать
ѣсть	to eat	-ѣдать
[вѣсть]	to know	вѣдать

*Similarly* in the third conjugation, in the *vocalic* stems.

e.g. бить	to beat	бивать
дуть	to blow	дувать
знать	to know	знавать, etc.

In the last-named verb a distinction must be made between -знаю, -знаешь, etc. (from -знать), and -знаю, -знаёшь, etc. (from -знавать). [v. § 53 (5).]

When these primitive verbs are compounded, the imperfective takes the derivative form in -ать, and the perfective the original form in -ть, -чь.

e.g. сжечь	to burn down,	сожгú	I shall burn down,
	сжигать (imperfective),	сжигáю	I am burning down
	помочь	to help,	помогú
		помогú	I shall help ; помогать (imperfective)

Similarly призна́ть to recognise, призна́ю I shall recognise ; but imperfective призна́вать, призна́ю I recognise.



	забывáть (imperf.)	забывáю I forget
<i>but</i>	забы́ть (perf.)	забу́ду I shall forget
	разсѣвáть (imperf.)	разсѣвáю I disperse
	разсѣ́ять (perf.)	разсѣ́ю I shall disperse
	умира́ть (imperf.)	умира́ю I am dying
	умерѣ́ть (perf.)	умру́ I shall die
	понимáть (imperf.)	понимáю I understand
	поймáть (perf.)	пойму́ I shall understand
		[v. § 49, II.]
	возставáть (imperf.)	возстаю́ I rise
	возста́ть (perf.)	возстану́ I shall rise
	выно́сить (imperf.)	вы́нести to carry away (perf.)

*Observe.*—прочѣсть, прочитáть to read through (perfective); прочítывать (imperfective).

## (2) Second conjugation in -нуть.

These verbs, as has been explained, are all either perfective or imperfective in themselves.

e.g. угáснуть to be extinguished (imperf.), past tense угáсь; засóхнуть to dry, засóхъ; кíнуть to throw, imperf. кидáть, past tense кíнулъ.

Perfectives in -нуть are often called “instantaneous” or “semelfactive,” because they denote a single action.

e.g. кричáть to shout, кри́кнуть to shout on one occasion  
дерзáть, дерзнúть to venture

## (3) Third conjugation.

The manner in which the original verbs of this conjugation form their perfectives has been stated in § 59, I. (1).

Derivative verbs in -ѣть are “inceptive” in meaning, e.g. зеленѣть, viridescō, to become green, and naturally imperfective. They must be compounded with a preposition to make them perfective.

Derivative verbs in -ать, -ять are naturally imperfective, and compounded with various prepositions become perfective, e.g. дѣлать to do, сдѣлать.

Most original verbs in -ать, such as писать to write, can only form their perfective by means of a preposition, as such verbs cannot vary their form any further, or make use of a suffixal stem, e.g. писать, perfective написать.

Thus напишѹ means “I shall write.”

To the third conjugation belong the *iteratives* in -ать and -ывать. The former are always accented on the termination, the latter always on the root which is in its fullest form.

e.g. -честь, -чту: читать to read (imperfective),  
прочитать (perfective), читаю (iterative)  
I read here and there.

звать to call (perfective in compounds only),  
e.g. созвать to call together (iterative созывать).

Verbs whose radical vowel is o change the o to a in forming the iterative.

e.g. ломать to break ломывать  
бросать to throw брасывать  
(abstract sense: бросить concrete)

and even усвоить to appropriate усваивать

In some cases, the difference between the imperfective and iterative is merely accentual, the iterative termination -ать being always accented.

Imperfective.		Iterative.	
e.g. двѣгаться	move	онъ двѣжется	двѣгать -двѣгаль
бѣгать	run	бѣгаю	бѣгать -бѣгаль
ползать	creep	ползаю	ползать -ползаль
падать	fall	падаю	падать -падаль

This distinction only applies to some original verbs of the type of писать [v. § 52 (3)], in which the suffixal vowel -a- is dropped in the formation of the present; such verbs having a fixed accent in the imperfective on the root, and the infinitive termination -ать unaccented.

#### (4) Fourth conjugation.

Many of the original verbs in -ить от -ѣть, -ю, -ишь, have another form of conjugation in -ять, like the iteratives in -ать. In some cases the original form in -ить, -ѣть is perfective, the imperfective being in -ать (as was seen to be the rule in monosyllabic verbs like знать, мочь, беречь, знавать, -могать, -берегать); in others the original form in -ить is imperfective, and the alternative -ять or ать has an *abstract* meaning.

Again, some verbs in -ить derived from intransitive monosyllabic verbs, such as лечь, стать, etc., are causative.

Perfective.		Imperfective.	
e.g. простѣть	to forgive*	простать	
явить	show	являть	

\* Простѣться say farewell, простѣте good-bye.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	лиш́ить	deprive	лиш́ать
	пуст́ить	permit	пусќать
	ступ́ить	tread	ступ́ать
	хват́ить	seize	хват́ать
	куп́ить	buy	покуп́ать (distinguish куп́ать to bathe)
	род́иться	be born	ражд́аться*
	наслад́иться	enjoy	наслажд́аться*
	посѣ́тить	visit	посѣ́щать*
	убѣ́дить	to convince	убѣ́ждать*

	Imperfective.	
	<i>Abstract or habitual.</i>	<i>Concrete meaning.</i>
e.g.	лет́ать	fly летѣ́ть [v. § 58]
	пл́авать	swim плы́ть
	бѣ́гать	run бѣ́жать ( <i>but бѣ́гать iterative</i> )
	саж́ать	plant сад́ить
	лом́ать	break лом́ить
Similarly	нос́ить	carry нест́и
	вод́ить	lead вест́и
	воз́ить	bear вез́ти
	ла́зить *	climb лѣ́зть
	блист́ать	gleam блесќуть
	гон́ять	drive гнат́ь

When these verbs are compounded, the derivative form in -ать, -ять is imperfective, the original form perfective.

e.g.	отплыв́ать	отплыв́ить	to swim away
	убѣ́гать	убѣ́жать	to run away

---

\* Church Slav change of д to жд, and т to щ.

- e.g. Я ломаю карандаши.  
I (generally) break pencils.  
Медвѣдь ломится въ дверь.  
The bear is breaking into the door.  
Корабль отплывáетъ.  
The ship is leaving port.  
Лодка ужé отплыла отъ берега.  
The boat has left the shore.  
Нѣмцы убѣгають отъ штыка.  
Germans run away from the bayonet.  
Собака схватила кость и убѣжала.  
The dog snatched the bone and ran away.  
Нѣмцы пришлѣи во Францію съ тѣмъ что́бы  
гра́бить.  
The Germans came into France to plunder.  
Нѣмцы пришлѣи въ Бельгію и огра́били всѣ  
города́.  
The Germans came into Belgium and plundered  
all the cities.

Thirdly, the alternative form in -ать, -ять may be iterative.

Imperfective.		Iterative.
e.g. хранѣть	keep	хранѣть
видѣть	see	видѣть
ударить	strike	ударѣть

In compound verbs the form in -а́ть, -я́ть is used for imperfectives, the form in -и́ть for perfectives.

e.g. Отвѣчу I shall answer.

Отвѣчаю I am answering.

Разорю ва́ши города́ и селѣнія.

I will destroy your cities and settlements.

Въ продолженіе двухъ мѣсяцевъ король разоря́лъ  
неприя́тельскіе города́.

For two months the king had been des-  
troying the hostile cities.



Generally the iteratives are formed in -ивать or -ывать, verbs in -ѣть taking -ивать.

e.g. говорѣть	speak	говори́вать
проси́ть	ask	пра́шивать
ходи́ть	go	ха́живать
глядѣ́ть	look at	глады́вать
ви́дѣть	see	ви́дывать

## II. *The formation of the perfective in derivative verbs.*

As has been stated, derivative verbs end in -ѣть, -ать and -ить.

Most verbs in -ѣть are inceptive and naturally imperfective, and generally, if uncompounded, have no perfective.

e.g. слабе́ть to become weak

Verbs in -ать form the perfective by compounding, and this rule applies to original verbs like писа́ть, пишу́, пише́ть, as well as to derivatives, such as жела́ть, пожела́ть.

As to the choice of preposition, there is no general rule; на, разь, по, о, у, вы, съ, etc., can all be used. Only practice can distinguish the perfectives from the compounds.

		Perfective.
e.g. дѣ́лать	to do	сдѣ́лать
жела́ть	to wish	позежа́ть
владѣ́ть	to rule	овладѣ́ть
смотре́ть	to look	посмотрѣ́ть
ви́дѣть	to see	уви́дѣть
писа́ть	to write	написа́ть
тра́тить	to lose	истра́тить

Verbs in -ить mostly have a secondary form -ять, which in the uncompounded verb has an iterative

meaning. Some un-compounded imperfective verbs in -ить form their perfectives, like those in -ать, by compounding with a particle.

e.g. строить	to build	построить
грабить	to plunder	ограбить
сердиться	to be angry	разсердиться
травожить	to disquiet	встревожить
платить	to pay	заплатить

Again no general rule can be stated.

### III. Aspects formed from a different root.

Of these there are very few.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	идти	to go	ходить
	поймать	to catch	ловить ( <i>but</i> понять understood, понимать)
	ударить	to strike	бить, and ударять
	положить	to lay	класть (кладу)
	взять	to take	брать
	Concrete.		Abstract. Iterative.
e.g.	ѣхать	to drive	ѣздить ѣзжать
	слышать (слышу)	to hear	слыхать (слышú)
	дышать (дышитъ)	to breathe	дыхать (дышетъ)

e.g. Я ѣзжу въ городъ каждый день.  
I go to the city every day.

Я ѣхалъ домой съ возомъ.  
I drove home (in a carriage).

Почти ежедневно хожу пѣшкомъ домой, но  
когда-то я ѣзжалъ вмѣстѣ съ баринномъ.

Almost every day I walk home; but  
sometimes I drove with the master.

IV. *The aspects of compound verbs.*

The general rule is that all compound verbs are perfective. The imperfective is formed by the iterative form in -*ать*, -*ять*, -*ывать*, -*ивать*; if a derivative form exists in -*ать* this serves as the imperfective, and the iterative in -*ать*, -*ять*, -*ывать* conserves the iterative meaning.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	вынести	to carry out	выно́сить
	выно́сить	to endure	выно́шивать
	объ́хать	to drive round	объ́зжать
	вы́везти	to cart out	выво́зить
<i>but</i>	выво́дить	to lead about	выво́живать
	выво́зить	to take about (in a carriage)	выво́живать
	вы́звать	to summon	вызыва́ть
	вы́играть	to gain at play	выи́грывать

*Observe.*—*вы* takes the accent, except in the imperfective, which retains the accent of the uncompound verb. All other prepositions are unaccented, except in the past tenses and past participles passive of monosyllabic verbs, e.g. *избранъ* chosen [v. § 49, II.], *нанять*, *прóдалъ*, etc.

e.g.	вы́йти	to go out	выходи́ть
	провести́	to pass (time)	прово́дить
	обновить	to renew	обновля́ть
<i>Observe</i>	положи́ть	suppose	полага́ть
	уложи́ть	pack	укла́дывать
	доложи́ть	report (a fact)	докла́дывать

Observe:—

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
	вы́бѣжать	to run away	вы́бѣгать
but	вы́бѣгать	to attain by a run	вы́бѣживать
	вы́йти	to go away	выхо́дить
but	выхо́дить	to gain	выха́живать
	за́ѣхать (за́ѣду)	to go beyond	за́ѣзжать
but	за́ѣздить	to tire out	за́ѣзживать
	прово́сти	to lead through	прово́дить
but	прово́дить	to accompany	прово́жать, or прово́живать

In some cases the only perfective is the semelfactive in -нуть.

e.g.	двѣ́нуть	to move	двѣ́гать
	кивну́ть	to nod	кива́ть
	тро́нуть	to touch	тро́гать
	шепну́ть	to whisper	шепта́ть
	кри́кнуть	to cry	крича́ть
	вздо́хну́ть	to sigh	взды́хать

In forming imperfectives the general rule is that the iterative form of the un-compounded verb is the stem of the imperfective of the compounded verb.

e.g.	проме́днить	to delay	проме́дливать
	обману́ть	to deceive	обма́нывать
	погасну́ть*	to be extinguished	погаса́ть
	поги́бну́ть*	to perish	погиба́ть
	взгляну́ть	to look up	взглядыва́ть
	замкву́ть	to lock up	замыка́ть

Observe.—тяну́ть (imperfective) to pull, тя́гивать; but in compounds, протя́нуть to stretch forth, протя́гивать. [v. § 50, I.]

\* But past tense погѣ́бъ, погасъ.

e.g. Онъ вы́тянулъ о́грóмнаго лѣща.

He pulled up a huge bream.

Ива́нъ Ива́нычъ тя́нетъ ля́мку до́браго семья́нина.

Iván Iványč works hard like a good family man [pulls the shoulder-strap].

Мой дру́гъ нео́днокра́тно вы́тягива́лъ ме́ня изъ т́руднаго по́ложѣнія.

My friend more than once has pulled me out of an awkward situation.

Other instances are :—

Perfective.

узна́ть

acknowledge

осла́бѣть

to become weak

осла́бнуть (semelfactive)

повѣ́рить

believe

поручи́ть

to commission

продóлжить

to continue

помѣ́тить

to mark

убѣ́жать

to run away

переплы́ть

to swim through

уѣ́хать

to drive away

(in a carriage)

отогна́ть

to drive away

описа́ть

to describe

пригото́вить

to prepare

придѣ́лать

to affix

прижѣ́чь

to scorch

приказа́ть

to decree

прими́рить

to reconcile

избра́ть

to choose

Imperfective.

узнава́ть (узнаю́)

[§ 53 (5)]

осла́бѣва́ть

повѣ́ря́ть

поруча́ть

продолжа́ть

помѣ́ча́ть

убѣ́га́ть

переплы́ва́ть

уѣ́жа́ть

отгона́ть

описыва́ть

приготовля́ть

придѣ́лыва́ть

прижига́ть

приказы́вать

прими́ря́ть

избира́ть



The learner must *not* confuse those verbs derived from *compound nouns or adjectives*. Such verbs are naturally imperfective, as the formative stem contains the particle, which is not added to the verb.

	Imperfective.	Perfective.
e.g. <b>безъ поко́я</b> without rest	<b>безпоко́ить</b> disturb	<b>обезпоко́ить</b>
<b>ра́зумъ</b> reason	<b>разу́мѣть</b> understand	<b>уразу́мѣть</b>
<b>обѣ́дъ</b> dinner	<b>обѣ́дать</b> dine	<b>пообѣ́дать</b>
<b>забо́та</b> trouble	<b>забо́титься</b>	<b>озабо́титься</b>
<b>наслѣ́д-ство</b> inheritance	<b>наслѣ́довать</b>	<b>унаслѣ́довать</b>
<b>предчу́вствіе</b> foreboding	<b>предчу́вствовать</b>	
<b>сочу́вствіе</b> sympathy	<b>сочу́вствовать</b> [v. § 58]	
<b>безъ люде́й</b> without people	<b>безлюде́ть</b> to become de- populated ( <b>обезлюде́ть</b> perf.)	

The accentuation of compounded verbs is that of the simple, save with **вы**, v. § 59, IV.

*Except* **вто́рить** to repeat

**повтори́ть** to repeat, imperfective **повтори́ть**

**ясни́ться** to clear up (of the weather)

**изъясни́ть** explain, imperfective **изъясни́ть**

#### V. *Causatives and inceptives.*

As stated in § 53 (1) and § 54, verbs derived from adjectives have transitive forms in **-и́ть**, and intransitives in **-ѣ́ть**.

e.g. **си́ній** blue, **сине́ть** to turn blue, **сини́ть** to make blue

**мя́гкій** soft, **мягчи́ть** and **размягча́ть**

**сла́дкій** sweet, **услади́ть** and **услажда́ть**

**молодо́й** young, **молоде́ть** to grow young,

**молоди́ть** to make young, etc., etc.

Similarly, transitive verbs in *-ить* are derived from intransitive primitives.

e.g. лечь to lie down	положить to lay
сѣсть to sit down	посадить to seat
стать to stand (ста́ну)	станови́ться to stand, and ста́вить to place

e.g. Я поста́вилъ ва́зу на коло́нну.  
I put the vase on the column.

VI. *по* and *за* as forming depreciatory and inceptive verbs.

*по* when compounded with some verbs gives a depreciatory or diminutive sense.

e.g. мѣ́ться to wash  
 помы́ться to wash here and there  
 помути́ть to create squabbles  
 поку́ривать, покури́ть, to smoke occasionally  
 поку́шать (perfective поѣ́сть) to eat by snacks  
 покáрмливать (покорми́ть) to feed slightly  
 пока́чивать to waver (покача́ть perfective,  
 покачну́ть to shake)  
 покáшлиять to cough a little (пока́шливать)

*за* often creates another inceptive aspect, to begin doing.

e.g. зава́ривать (завари́ть perfective) to simmer  
 зава́шивать (завѣ́сить) to veil, begin veiling  
 засвиста́ть to begin whistling  
 засме́яться to begin laughing  
 засыха́ть (засохну́ть) to start drying  
 затмева́ть (затми́ть) to grow dusk, etc.  
 затону́ть to start sinking (зата́пливать),  
 затопи́ть perfective  
 засѣва́ть (засѣ́ять) to begin to sow

But compounds with *за* are often perfective.

e.g. Русские затопили\* корабль въ Севастопольской бухтѣ.

The Russians sank the ship in the Bay of Sebastopol.

### § 60. REFLEXIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.

As stated previously [v. *infra*, § 10, § 42 (2) (i) and (ii)] the Russian verb is very defective; it possesses only one conjugated tense, and no subjunctives.

The passive is mostly supplied by the reflexive, *ся* and *сь* being added to the terminations [v. § 41, V. (1)]; *ся* being added to consonantal terminations, *сь* to vocalic. This *ся* is nearly always unaccented; there are very few exceptions.

e.g. я дѣлаюсь I become, am made, дѣлается, дѣлавшись, etc.

родиться to be born, ро́дится, родился, родились  
or родились.

*Deponent* verbs also exist, i.e. reflexive forms in which the reflexive idea has vanished, or is not expressed or required in translation.

e.g. я моюсь I wash myself, I wash  
король верну́лся домо́й the King has returned  
home  
стыдѣ́ться to feel ashamed †

---

\* Distinguish затопи́ть, затопле́нный (затопля́ть) to sink; and затопи́ть, затопле́нный, затопли́вать, to heat.

† Distinguish стыдъ shame, стыдѣ́ться; and сты́ть (perfective), сты́нуть (imperfective) to be cold.

\* Similarly in French “se suicider,” “s’approcher de” are always reflexive or deponent.

But when a verb has as its express object the same person as the subject, the enclitic form *ся* and *сь* (which are *always* sounded *сá* and *сь* [v. § 41, V. (1)]), are *not* used, the full form *себя* taking their place.

e.g. Алексѣй не владѣеть собой.

Alexis has no self-control.

Мальчикъ взлѣзъ на крышу и уби́лся.

The boy crawled on to the roof and was killed.

Онъ покóнчилъ собой.

He committed suicide [ended by himself].

Онъ оговорился что его́ цифры мо́гутъ быть невѣрны и себя́ оградилъ этимъ отъ всякихъ нарека́нй.

He defended himself on the ground that his figures might not be correct, and guarded himself on this score from all blame.

Ты не испóльзовалъ своего́ положенія а я провёлъ своё время беспо́лезнымъ образомъ.

You made no use of your position, and I spent my time uselessly.

Я всегда́ имѣю при себѣ́ портрётъ жены́.

I always have my wife's portrait with me.

The Passive is also expressed in two other ways:—

(1) With a passive participle and the verb *быть* as in English.

e.g. Комната́ была́ у́брана́ цвѣ́тами.

The room was decorated with flowers.

(2) With the verb in the third person plural, with the indefinite meaning of "one," "он," "man."

e.g. Зову́тъ меня́ по фами́лии Монача́вымъ.

My family name is Монача́хов [they call me . . . .]

The reflexive forms are never used loosely to express "one another." Thus [v. § 82, IV.] :—

Рабо́чие Росси́и, А́нглии, Фра́нции и Герма́нии  
убива́ютъ другъ дру́га.

The workmen of Russia, England, France and  
Germany are slaying one another.

Слѣ́довали другъ за дру́гомъ.

They followed each other.

## THE NUMERALS.

### § 61. PRELIMINARY.

The inflection of the Russian numerals is at first sight very difficult. The problem can be simplified.

(a) In the first place, nearly all the numerals are nouns, and are therefore followed by the genitive plural.

(β) Secondly, being nouns, when compounded, e.g. двѣ́сти (two hundred), each part follows its own declension.

(γ) Thirdly, два, три, четы́ре, 2, 3 and 4, take the equivalent of the old dual, i.e. the genitive singular.

(δ) Fourthly, the noun in ordinals is governed by the last element of the numeral.



e.g. пять козъ five goats

but двѣ козы́ two goats (коза́, plural козы́)

три рублѣ́ three roubles (plural рублѣ́)

три́дцать три поѣзда thirty-three trains

Also сто one hundred

двѣсти two hundred (Old Slav dual termination)

триста three hundred (gen. sing.)

пятьсо́тъ five hundred (gen. plural)

Other notes on the use of the numerals will be found in § 81.

### § 62. I.—*The Numerals 1–10.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.	Collective.*	Fraction.
1	одинъ	Adj.	первы́й		
2	два	„	второ́й	дво́е, па́ра	полови́на
3	три	„	трети́й†	тро́е	тре́ть ‡
4	четы́ре	„	четве́ртый	чѣтверо	чѣтверть‡
5	пять	Noun	пя́тый	пя́теро	пя́тая§
6	шесть	„	шесто́й	ше́стеро	шестáя§
7	семь	„	седьмо́й	се́меро	etc.
8	во́семь	„	восьмо́й	во́сьмеро	
9	де́вять	„	девя́тый	девя́теро	
10	де́сять	„	деся́тый	деся́теро	

These are the ten simple forms.

\* The most common are дво́е, тро́е, чѣтверо, пя́теро, се́меро; but all are equally common in the form двѣ́о, трѣ́о, etc., meaning 2nd, twice, three times as much. Families are thus designated: у него́ дво́е, трѣ́о, чѣтверо, дѣтей: пять, шесть, семь, etc., челове́къ дѣтей; of an assembly, ихъ бу́детъ пять, etc., челове́къ.

† Declined like барани́й [v. § 34 (3)].

‡ Feminines in и.

§ Supply часть part. All the other fractions are similarly formed.

|| Very rare.

Одѣнь is declined exactly like самъ [v. § 41, VIII.]; the vowel “и” drops out.

Thus—одѣнь, одѣно, одѣна, одѣногѣ, одѣноѣ, etc.

	<i>Plural.</i>	
	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	одѣнѣ	одѣнѣ
Gen. Loc.	одѣнѣхѣ	одѣнѣхѣ
Dat.	одѣнѣмѣ	одѣнѣмѣ
Instr.	одѣнѣми	одѣнѣми

The plural means “some,” cf. English “the ones.” Both forms, одѣнѣ, одѣнѣ, are generally sounded alike (одѣнѣ).

e.g. Вѣдь на ѣтихѣ полкахѣ остѣлось тѣлько дѣсять книгѣ.

There are only ten books left on these shelves.

У менѣ остѣлось лишѣ три рублѣ.

I have only three roubles left.

Какѣ на бѣдѣ у менѣ остѣлось тѣлько три яйцѣ.

Unluckily I have only three eggs left.

два, три, четѣре are declined as follows:—

	Masc. and Neut.		Fem.	
e.g. Nom.	два	двѣ	три	четѣре
Gen. Loc.	двухѣ		трѣхѣ	четѣрѣхѣ
Dat.	двумѣ		трѣмѣ	четѣрѣмѣ
Instr.	двумѣ		трѣмѣ	четѣрѣмѣ

пѣять to дѣсять are regular nouns like кость, часть, etc.

e.g. Nom.	пѣять
Gen. Dat. Loc.	пѣтѣ
Instr.	пѣтѣю

But, as nouns, the numerals are only followed by the genitive in the nominative or accusative; in oblique

cases they take the case of the nouns ; the numeral is attracted to the case of the noun.

оба, обоѣ both, is declined similarly to два.

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	оба	обоѣ
Gen. Loc.	обоихъ	обѣихъ
Dat.	обоимъ	обѣимъ
Instr.	обоими	обѣими

## II.—The Numerals 11–90.

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
11	одиннадцать	Noun	одиннадцатый
12	двѣнадцать	„	двѣнадцатый (collective дюжина)
13	тринадцать	„	тринадцатый
14	четырнадцать	„	четырнадцатый
15	пятнадцать	„	пятнадцатый
16	шестнадцать	„	шестнадцатый
17	семнадцать	„	семнадцатый
18	восемнадцать	„	восемнадцатый
19	девятнадцать	„	девятнадцатый
20	двадцать	„	двадцатый
21	двадцать одинъ [v. § 61 (δ)]		двадцать первый
22	двадцать два, etc.	„	двадцать второй, etc.
30	тридцать	Noun	тридцатый
40	сорокъ	„	сороковой
50	пятьдесятъ*	„	пятидесятый
60	шестьдесятъ	„	шестидесятый
70	семьдесятъ	„	семидесятый
80	восемьдесятъ	„	восемидесятый
90	девяносто	„	девяностый

For the fractions, v. пять.

\* Sounded pidd'is'ýát'.

The cardinals from 11–90 are mere compositions of the simple forms and *дѣсять* (10).

(1) The “teens” are formed by saying one-on-ten, two-on-ten; the preposition *на* is accented, except in *одиннадцать* and *четырнацать*, and *дѣсять* is contracted to *дцать*.

The numbers 11–19 are all declined like *дѣсять*.

e.g. Nom.	<i>семна́дцать</i>
Gen. Dat. Loc.	<i>семна́дцати</i>
Instr.	<i>семна́дцатью</i>

(2) The numbers 20 and 30 are similar compounds, two-ten, three-ten. They are declined thus:—

Nom.	<i>три́дцать</i>
Gen. Dat. Loc.	<i>три́дцати́</i>
Instr.	<i>три́дцатью́</i>

(3) *со́рокъ* (40), and *девяно́сто* (90), are nouns of the first conjugation. *со́рокъ* accents the termination throughout, e.g. *со́рока́*, *со́року́*, etc.

(4) The cardinals 50, 60, 70, 80 decline both parts *separately and similarly*.

e.g. Nom. Voc. Acc.	<i>се́мьдесятъ</i>
Gen. Loc. Dat.	<i>семи́десяти</i>
Instr.	<i>семи́юдесятью</i>

As though the two words were not written together.

### III.—*The Numerals 100–1,000,000.*

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
100	<i>сто</i>	Noun	<i>со́тый*</i>
200	<i>двѣсти</i>	Adj. & noun (joined)	<i>двухсо́тый</i>
300	<i>триста</i>	„ „	<i>трѣхсо́тый</i>
400	<i>четы́реста</i>	„ „	<i>четы́рехсо́тый</i>

\* Collective *со́тня*.

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
500	пятьсо́тъ	Two nouns	пятисо́тый
600	шестьсо́тъ	„ „	шестисо́тый
700	семьсо́тъ	„ „	семисо́тый
800	восемьсо́тъ	„ „	восемьсо́тый
900	девятъсо́тъ	„ „	девятисо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	Noun	ты́сячный
2,000	двѣ́ ты́сячи	Adj. & noun	двухты́сячный
3,000	три ты́сячи	„ „	трѣхты́сячный
4,000	четы́ре ты́сячи and so on	„ „	четырёхъ- ты́сячный
60,000	шестьдеса́тъ ты́сячь	Three nouns	шестидеса́ти- ты́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячь	Nouns	сто- о́г ста- ты́сячный
1,000,000	милліо́нъ	Noun	милліо́нный

сто is declined as follows:—

*Singular.* Nom. Voc. Acc. сто  
Gen. ста, etc.

Similarly девяно́сто. But when сто is used in a long figure, with others, all the oblique cases are uniformly ста (the genitive); and similarly девяно́сто.

*Plural.* Nom. Voc. Acc. ста  
Gen. со́тъ  
Dat. стамъ  
Instr. ста́ми  
Loc. стахъ

All the compound numerals in this division decline each part separately.

e.g. двѣ́сти, двухсо́тъ, двумстамъ, двумста́ми,  
двухстахъ, etc.



ты́сяча is a regular feminine noun; but the instrumental singular is sometimes ты́сячью, as though it were a noun of the third declension.

сто, со́рокъ, девяно́сто, when declined with nouns, extend the genitive ending to the dative and instrumental, optionally to the locative.

e.g. Nom. Acc. сто со́рокъ листо́въ 140 leaves (of paper)

Gen. ста сорока́ листо́въ

Dat. ста сорока́ листáмъ

Instr. ста сорока́ листáми

Loc. ста сорока́ листáхъ

IV. (1) *Frequency.* Examples of use:—

оди́нь разъ once, or одна́жды

два́ ра́за twice, or два́жды

три́ ра́за thrice, or три́жды

четы́ре ра́за four times, etc., or четы́режды

пять разъ [v. § 24 (4)]

This is the only and regular way of forming this series.

(2) *Distributives* are formed with the preposition по, e.g. по́ два, по́ три, по́ четы́ре; but with all other numbers in the dative: по́ пяти, по́ сту, по́ сороку́, по́ девяно́сту (or по́ сорока́).

(3) *Nought* is нуль, masculine.

(4) *The noun is governed by the numeral immediately preceding, however high the whole numeral may be.* In the nominative, or accusative, the noun thus enumerated is in the singular after оди́нь; gen. sing. after два, три,

четыре; gen. plural after all the others. In the oblique cases, i.e. all except the accusative and nominative, the numeral and noun alike are in concord in the appropriate oblique case.

e.g. двáдцать одíнь фунтъ 21 pounds

три́дцать три коня́ 33 horses

мéньше двáдцати́ пяти́ мину́тъ less than 25 minutes

(5) *Decimals.*

нуль цѣлыхъ дѣвятъ десятыхъ копѣйки съ версты́.

·9 kop. to the verst (nought wholes and nine tenths . . .).

Отъ одной до ста шестидесяти вёрствъ, по одной цѣлой, четыре тысячи триста семьдесятъ пять десяти тысячныхъ копѣйки съ пассажира́.

From 1 to 160 versts at 1·4375 kop. per passenger per verst.

(6) *Compound ordinals.* Only the last numeral is declined.

e.g. Двáдцать девятаго декабрí (мѣсяца) въ тысяча восемьсотъ девяносто седьмомъ годѹ.

On the 29th Dec. 1914. [v. § 24 (1).]

Въ сто девяносто седьмомъ годѹ до рождества Христо́ва.

In 197 v.c.

Гостиница съ болѣе чѣмъ двумястами но́мерами.

A hotel with over 200 rooms.

Цѣна́ ко́мнать понижа́ется лѣтомъ до пятидесяти процéнтовъ.

The price of rooms is reduced in the summer by 50%.

As a complete example, 2,367,134·8295 aršins (аршинъ a measure of length about a yard) would be thus declined:—

Nom. Два милліона, триста шестьдесѣтъ семь ты́сячь, сто три́дцать четы́ре цѣ́лыхъ, во́семь ты́сячь двѣ́сти девяно́сто пять десяти́тысячныхъ арші́на.

Acc. As genitive or nominative; in this case as nominative.

Gen. Двухъ милліо́новъ, трѣхсо́тъ шесті́десѣти семі́ ты́сячь, ста три́дцати́ четы́рехъ цѣ́лыхъ, во́семь ты́сячь двухсо́тъ девяно́ста пяти́ десяти́тысячныхъ арші́на.\*

Dat. Двумъ милліо́намъ трѣмста́мъ шесті́десѣти семі́ ты́сячамъ ста (огъ сту) три́дцати́ четы́ремъ цѣ́лымъ, во́семь ты́сячамъ девяно́ста (огъ девяно́сту) пяти́ десяти́тысячнымъ арші́на.

Instr. Двумі́ милліо́нами тремѣста́ми шестью́-дѣсятью, семью́ ты́сячами, ста три́дцатью́ четы́рми́ цѣ́лыми, во́семью́ ты́сячами девяно́ста (огъ девяно́стомъ) пятью́ десяти́тысячными арші́на.

Loc. Двухъ милліо́нахъ трѣхста́хъ шесті́-дѣсяти, семі́ ты́сячахъ, ста три́дцати́ четы́рехъ цѣ́лыхъ, во́семь ты́сячахъ девяно́ста (огъ девяно́стѣ) пяти́ десяти́тысячныхъ арші́на.

(7) два, три, четы́ре, *in the nominative or accusative*, are followed by the noun in the genitive singular or by the nominative *or* genitive plural of adjectives.

\* Gen. sing., the decimal being expressed by  $\frac{8295}{10000}$  of an aršin. The last numeral always governs the noun.

This arbitrary rule is based on the fact that два, три, четы́ре in the older language took the dual; the dual having become obsolete, use was made of whatever inflections most closely approximated to it.

e.g. Nom. два вы́сокихъ (or -ie) солда́та two tall soldiers

Gen. двухъ вы́сокихъ солда́тъ

Dat. двумъ вы́сокимъ солда́тамъ

Instr. двумя́ вы́сокими солда́тами

Loc. двухъ вы́сокихъ солда́тахъ

With nouns only used in the plural, there are alternative forms, дво́и, трóи; otherwise the collectives are used.

e.g. ворóта the gates чéтверо ворóтъ four gates

But the ordinary collectives, with the genitive plural, may be used instead of дво́и, трóи, чéтверо.\*

дво́е and трóе are declined like óба, but accent the terminations и́хъ, и́мъ, и́ми.

чéтверо and all the other similar collectives form the oblique cases like plural adjectives, accenting the termination, e.g. пяте́рыхъ, etc.

(8) полови́на, standing by itself, is "a half."

It is also used in composition with other words, e.g. полтора́  $1\frac{1}{2}$  (for полъ-вторá; cf. German, andert-halb  $1\frac{1}{2}$ , dritthalb  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ); also in words like полфúнта half a pound, полчаса́ half an hour, полго́да half a year, etc. For further notes, v. § 81, IV.

\* So, too, in Latin: *templum, tria templa*; but *aedes*, plural *trinae aedes*.

Both parts are separately declined; all the oblique cases of *полъ* being *полу*.

	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
	1½ аршинъ		1½ версты
e.g. N.V.A.	полторá аршина		полторы́ версты
Gen.	полúтора аршинъ*		полúторы вёрсть
Dat.	{ полúтора } аршинамъ		полúторѢ верстáмъ
	{ полúтору }		
Instr.	{ полúтора } аршинами		полúторою верстáми
	{ полúторымъ }		
Loc.	{ полúтора } аршинахъ		полúторѢ верстáхъ
	{ полúторѢ }		

*Singular.**Plural.*

## Half-pound

N.V.A.	полуфúнта	полуфúнты
Gen.	полуфúнта	полуфúнтовъ
Dat.	полуфúнту	полуфúнтамъ
Instr.	полуфúнтомъ	полуфúнтами
Loc.	полуфúнтѢ	полуфúнтахъ

However, usage varies with regard to *полторá*, and the masculine forms are often employed with feminine nouns. The noun-component is declined in full in compounds like *полуфúнта*, and bears and retains its own accent.

*Пóлдень* and *пóлночь*, "noon" and "midnight," are declined *полúдня*, *полúночи*, and so on, the accent always resting on the second syllable, and the *полу* being invariable.

Similarly, *полторáста* 150, *полúтораста*, in all oblique cases.

\* v. § 24 (4).



Other fractions are expressed much as in English.

e.g. двѣ съ половиной бутылки two and a half bottles  
 тридцать пять и семнадцать тридцать восьмѣхъ  
 $35\frac{17}{38}$   
 четыре и три четверти  $4\frac{3}{4}$

(9) *Dates.*

The date and the month are put into the genitive, and the year, if accompanying, into the ordinal with the genitive года (годъ) year. If the year stands by itself, the locative въ году is used.

In *dates* the plural of годъ is лѣта (лѣто summer).

e.g. двадцать пятого декабрѣ тысяча девятьсотъ  
 четвертаго года, 25th December 1904  
 въ тысяча восемьсотъ пятнадцатомъ году  
 in 1815  
 шестьдесятъ лѣтъ тому назадъ sixty years ago

Numerals preceding the noun are exact denotations; when they follow, approximate.

e.g. года черезъ три in about three years' time  
 послѣ трехъ лѣтъ after three years

§ 63. THE ADVERBS.

The adverbial forms of adjectives are simply the neuter singular predicative, excepting adjectives in -скій, which form -ски; e.g. строго sternly, дорого dearly, раньше earlier, экономически economically.

Other adverbs will be learnt in the course of reading.

## § 64. THE PREPOSITIONS.

These are very commonly used in Russian, and are dealt with in §§ 70–80 in the Syntax.

## § 65. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunctions are best acquired in the course of reading. As the Russian verb possesses no moods, and as there is no inversion of sentences, the conjunctions present no difficulty. Some few may be noticed here.

**и** “and.”

**да** “yes,” is also used for “and,” but has a corroborative strengthening significance, and belongs to the older language.

**и** also is used in a sentence to mean “also.”

**а** “but” or “and,” when used in contradistinction rather than conjunction.

**но** “but” in contradistinction, or denial.

**ещё** “also.”

**или** “or.” **или—или**, “either . . . or.”

**ни—ни** “neither—nor.” As will be seen in § 85, these require a double negative, i.e. a negated verb as well.

## § 66. THE INTERJECTIONS.

These are best learnt from reading. Russian being a phonetic language, these primitive sounds are written as pronounced, not conventionally as in English; e.g. “hush” for “sh,” “ough!” for pain.

e.g. in Russian **ухъ!** **охъ!** **ахъ!** etc.

Other interjections are developments from recognised words, e.g. “Lo” (from “look”).

So, too, in Russian **убы!** woe!

## SYNTAX.

## § 67. PRELIMINARY.

In comparison with most other European languages Russian syntax presents comparatively few difficulties. The order is much the same as in English—subject, verb, object, adverbs.

There are no subjunctives, the use of which becomes technical as in French; gender is in the main sex, or determined by the suffix. Thus in French “*sa majesté le roi*” is feminine, and a following sentence must run: “*elle a bien voulu.*” In Russian, **Его Императорское\* Величество Царь соизволилъ**; the verb is in the masculine, though **Величество** is neuter.

In German, again, “*das Mädchen*” the girl, is supposed to be followed by neuter pronouns; in Russian, as in English, child **дитя́** (neuter), **лицо́** person (neuter) may be followed by **онъ, она́**, according to sense. Or again, **дѣсять** is feminine, but “there remained ten” (neuter, *general* impersonal sense) is **осталось дѣсять**. [v. § 62, I.]

The Russian richness in inflections gives the language a freedom of order such as was possessed by ancient Latin and Greek. But whereas the order of Latin was conventionalised and stiffened, Russian retains the natural order of words, with the liberty of slight transposition for emphasis; adjectives precede, unless otherwise desired; in fact, much the same considerations obtain as in English. But ambiguity ceases, the inflection defining the relations.

---

\* v. § 83, IV.

In one respect, as stated in § 33, Russian shows less flexibility in the formation of compound nouns. German (amongst modern languages) is the most adaptable, e.g. "Eisenbahnfremdverkehrsverbindungen" Railway - foreign - traffic - connections. English tacitly has the same power, with some ambiguity, e.g. The Foreign Office Clerks' Providence Society; the wooden baby's chair. In Russian all such relations *must* be stated by means of adjectives; e.g. желѣзная доро́га the railway, военные запáсы war supplies, на полицѣйскомъ хранѣнiи in police detention.

### § 68. THE ARTICLE.

The article does not exist in Russian. Nevertheless *то́тъ* is occasionally used for the definite article, and *о́динъ* for the indefinite, where the sentence requires amplification.

e.g. In the folk-tales :—

Жи́ль-бы́ль о́динъ бѣ́дный вдовѣ́ць.

There once lived a poor widower.

То́тъ са́мый торго́вецъ кото́рый мнѣ́ про́далъ  
велосипе́дь совѣ́туе́тъ тепѣ́рь мена́ купи́ть  
мотосикле́тъ.

The same dealer who sold me a bicycle now recommends me to buy a motor-cycle.

### § 69. THE CASES.

I. *The Nominative*.—As in all languages, the nominative is used for the subject of the sentence. It can *never* be governed by any preposition.

II. *The Vocative* has survived only a very few *strictly ecclesiastical* phrases.

e.g. Бóже	from Богъ	God
Гóсподи	from Господь	Lord
Óтче	from Отець	Father
Христé	from Христóсъ	Christ
Кня́же	from Князь	Prince
Иисýсе	from Иисýсъ	Jesus
Сýне	from Сынъ	the Son
Царю́	from Царь	Tsar
Влады́ко	from Влады́ка	Lord

In modern Russian the nominative takes its place.

III. *The Accusative* is properly the case to denote the direct object; e.g. Jack (nominative) built a house (accusative) **Ив́анъ пострóилъ домъ.**

However, in modern Russian, except in the singular of the second declension, special accusative forms no longer exist. [v. § 13.]

Hence a rule has sprung up that, *except* for nouns of the second declension in the singular, the objective case shall be the genitive whenever the object is a living being; also, without any exception, whenever the sentence is negative (in which event the genitive is really partitive; e.g. "I did not see him" is equivalent to "I saw nothing *of* him" \*). In every case the nominative form is used.

e.g. Принеси́ сюда́ я́блоки.
Bring the apples here.
Приведи́ за́втра твоего́ дру́га.
Bring your friend to-morrow.

---

\* Cf. in modern Spanish the use of *á* when the object is a person, e.g. "él conduzo *á* Juan" he brought John.



Я не видѣлъ чемодана.

I did not see the portmanteau.

Она не нашла лошади.

She did not find the horse.

Никогда не поймаетъ рыбы.

You never catch a fish.

Я привёлъ двухъ лошадей.

I have brought two horses.

Besides this very limited use as the objective case, this accusative case, but never its genitive substitute, is found with the following meaning: to indicate duration in space or time.

e.g. Я ждалъ тебѣ всё утро, цѣлый день, всю ночь, всю недѣлю, полчаса.

I was waiting for you all the morning, the whole day, all the night, all the week, half an hour.

Я гулялъ три часа и прошёлъ шесть вёрстъ.

I walked for three hours and went six versts.

Я прошёлъ всё разстояніе между Варшавой и Краковомъ.

I went all the distance between Warsaw and Cracow.

Лётчикъ пролетѣлъ половину пути къ нашему помѣстью.

The airman flew half the way to our country house.

#### IV. *The Genitive.*

In modern Russian the genitive is used for a variety of purposes. The simple genitive indicates the relationship of possession between two substantives.

In English there are two methods of indicating the genitive: the possessive case in *s*, and the preposition *of*.

(i) The simple genitive is used in three distinct ways: (*a*) subjective, (*β*) objective, (*γ*) defining.

e.g. (*a*) Wilson's house, i.e. Wilson has a house.  
(In such cases an active verb may be substituted.)

Cæsar's hatred, i.e. Cæsar hates.

(*β*) Henry IV.'s assassin, i.e. Henry IV. *was* assassinated.

The torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. the *Formidable* was torpedoed. (I.e. a passive verb may be substituted.)

(*γ*) A man of great talent, i.e. a greatly talented man.

In the last case an adjective may be substituted, and such phrases are really *inversions* of adjectives.

These subjective and objective genitives may be compounded.

e.g. U 21's torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. U 21 torpedoed the *Formidable*.

In other languages there is great ambiguity on this score. In Latin the genitive is used both subjectively and objectively: thus "Cæsar's odium" may mean either that Cæsar hates, or that Cæsar is hated; so, too, in French, "la haine de César."

In English there are irregular attempts to distinguish by means of the two forms, e.g. "Cæsar's hatred," or "the hatred of Cæsar."

Lastly, a subjective or objective genitive may be general or particular, permanent or casual. In the former event, an adjective can in very many cases be substituted.

e.g. God's love = the Divine love.

The king's banner = the royal banner.

But one does not speak (except jokingly) of the "royal pocket-handkerchief" or "the 'divine' love (of Zeus) for Semele."

In Russian we find the simplicity of French with the accuracy attempted by English, which has a rich stock of adjectival forms.

(1) *Subjective genitives* (nearly always possessive).

When *general*, the adjective of the governing noun is used; when *particular*, the genitive.

e.g. Нога слона раздавила чéрепъ тигра.

The elephant's leg shattered the tiger's skull.

(Possessive genitive.)

Нога слона почти безъ волóсъ.

The elephant's leg is almost hairless.

(Generic genitive.)

Слоновая кость стоить дорого.

Ivory [literally, elephant's bone] is dear.

Кавайльáкъ, убійца Генри́ха четвёртаго.

Cavaillac, the assassin of Henry IV.

(Objective.)

Юáнновы [наёмные] убійцы.

Iván (the Terrible's) [hired] assassins.

(Subjective.)

Пѣтъкны дни тянѹлись однообразно.

Pétya's days dragged on monotonously.

(Subjective and general.)

Именины Госудáря.

The Emperor's birthday (as a mere fact).

Госудáревы именины.

The Emperor's birthday (generalized, e.g. as a public holiday).

Закáтъ со́лнца.

Sunset (as a particular fact on a certain day).

Со́лнечный закáтъ.

Sunset (as a natural phenomenon).

Солдáтская свирѣ́пость.

Soldiers' savagery (in general).

*But* Свирѣ́пость солдатъ.

The soldiers' savagery (in particular).

Входъ въ дворѣ́ць.\*

The entrance of the palace (in particular).

*But* Дворцо́вые вхо́ды стрóго охраня́ются солдáтами.

Palace entrances are strictly guarded by soldiers (in general).

Доро́га (or шоссе́) къ Москвѣ́; отъ Москвѣ́.

The Moscow high-road (direction to or from).

\* I.e. in a direction; cf. English "the entrance into the station." But in French only "l'entrée de la gare," "la route de Versailles."

Москóвскія дорóги óчень хороші.

The Moscow roads are very fine.

Морскóе дно.

The bottom of the sea (generally).

Дно мóря.

The bottom of the sea (particularly).

Я жилъ въ отцóвскомъ дóмѣ.

I lived in my father's house (with my parents).

Я жилъ въ дóмѣ отцá.

I lived in my father's house (i.e. his, not mine or Mr. Smith's).

(2) *Objective genitives.*

These, too, may be general or particular, but the word in the genitive cannot be adjectivally expressed.

However, Russian avoids ambiguity by using the genitive or any other case with a suitable preposition, e.g. such as would be required by the verb corresponding to the governing noun.

e.g. Крестьянская любовь къ пёстрымъ украшеніямъ.

The peasant love of gaudy ornaments  
(general proposition).

Любовь этого мужіины къ жёнщинамъ.

This man's love of woman (in particular).

Ненависть къ Цёзарю.

The hatred of Cæsar (felt against Cæsar).

(Contrast ненависть Цёзаря the hate Cæsar felt.)



У него́ сильная́ любóвь къ иску́ству.

He has a great love of art.

Уб́йство Эду́арда второ́го.

The murder of Edward II.

Наде́жды Пёти на повыше́нiя.

\* Peter's hopes of promotion (in particular).

(Пётины in general.)

Разска́зчикъ э́той ска́зки.

The narrator of this fairy tale.

Ска́зочный ры́царь.

A fairy knight.

*In conclusion.*—(1) The possessive or other adjectival form must be substituted for the noun in the genitive in all phrases, where the sense is generalized.

(2) When the genitive is objective, the relationship is usually more closely defined by a proper preposition; but the possessive adjective is almost always inadmissible.

(3) In Russian, except for the proclitic pronouns *о́но, ея́, ихъ*, the genitive always *follows* the noun.

(4) The possessive adjective is *also* used to avoid a *succession* of genitives.

e.g. Моги́ла Вёры находи́лась въ глубинѣ́ кладби́ща.

Vera's grave was at the bottom of the cemetery.

*But* подро́бности Вёриной сме́рти.

The details of Vera's death (*"de la mort de Véra"*).

(ii) There exists a partitive genitive [v. § 24 (1)] in "y" with some nouns of the second declension,

and a distinction is made which can only be learnt by practice; generally speaking, when quantity, not quality, is implied, the form in “y” is preferred to that in “a.”

e.g. Пода́йте мнѣ ча́ю.

Give me some tea (*donnez-moi du thé*).

Два фунта са́хару.

Two pounds of sugar.

У насъ есть два со́рта ча́я.

We have two sorts of tea.

(iii) The genitive (and similarly the dative) frequently replaces the English nominative, in the impersonal constructions, for which the Russian language has a predilection.

e.g. За́втра, мо́жетъ-бы́ть меня́ не бу́детъ здѣсь.

To-morrow, may-be I shall not be here;  
literally, “there will not be of me here.”

Мнѣ не хо́чется спать.

I do not want to go to sleep.

Его́ нѣтъ до́ма.

He is not at home.

(iv) The genitive is replaced by the dative, in many instances, of ownership or possession.

e.g. Цѣна́ э́тимъ лошади́мъ двѣсти рублѣй.

The price of these horses is 200 roubles.

Онъ мнѣ ста́рый другъ.

He is an old friend.

Such sentences are really instances of the *dativus commodi*.

(v) The genitive is used after comparatives  
[cf. § 38, V.]

e.g. Дѣдя мо́ложе своѣй племя́нницы.

The uncle is younger than his niece.

Россія въ семна́дцать разъ бо́льше Фра́нции.

Russia is seventeen times bigger than France.

(vi) The genitive is the objective case, as stated  
in § 69, III.

(vii) The genitive is used after the adjectives and  
verbs denoting *fulness, worthiness, deprivation, fear, desire,*  
*expectancy, and value.*

e.g. Жизнь полна́ го́ря.

Life is full of sorrow.

Онъ досто́инъ наказáнія.

He deserves to be punished.

Вашъ вопро́съ каса́ется вы́ше-изло́женныхъ  
пу́нктовъ.

Your question touches points previously  
defined.

Я прошу́ ва́шего прощѣ́нія.

I beg for your forgiveness.

Онъ лиши́лся жи́зни.

He deprived himself of life (committed  
suicide).

Судъ лиши́лъ Петра́ Ива́новича всѣхъ правъ  
состо́янія.

The court deprived Peter Ivánovič of all  
rights of position (civil rights).

Всѣ лю́ди желáютъ здоро́вья.

Everybody desires health.

Я боюсь грома и молнии.  
I fear thunder and lightning.  
Это стоит денегъ.  
This costs money.

But if the price is stated, the accusative.

e.g. Бумага стоитъ три рубля пудъ.  
Paper costs three roubles a *pud*.  
Никогда не ожидалъ такого счастья.  
I never expected such luck.

(viii) To denote *dates on which*.

e.g. Третьяго дня Анна умерла.  
On the day before yesterday Ann died.  
Шестнадцатаго декабря.  
On the 16th December.

(ix) In all cases where the object of the verb is impliedly partitive, i.e. the word "some" might be added, or when in French the "partitive article" *du, des*, would be used.

e.g. Принесите вина. Bring some wine here.  
Apportez du vin.

So, too, after *all* words of quantity.

e.g. мало little, немного a little, довольно enough, etc.

(x) As in Latin to denote *descriptions*.

e.g. Онъ человекъ желѣзной настойчивости.  
He is a man of iron persistence (will).  
Пётръ Великій былъ высокаго роста.  
Peter the Great was a man of great height.  
Онъ былъ тогда шестидесяти лѣтъ.  
He was then sixty years old.  
(Or, ему было тогда шестьдесятъ лѣтъ.)

V. *The Dative.*

As in other languages, the dative marks the personal relation or effect.

e.g. Миѣ полезно читать по-ру́ски.

It is useful to me to read Russian.

The dative is also extensively used instead of the genitive. [v. § 69, IV. (iv).]

As in Latin, French, German, and other languages, many verbs which in English take a direct object are intransitive and take the dative.

e.g. грозѣ́ть кому́ threaten

удивля́ться чему́ be surprised

завѣ́довать кому́ or чему́ envy

смѣ́яться чему́ to rejoice at a thing (but смѣ́яться надъ кѣ́мъ of a person)

вѣ́рить кому́ or чему́ believe (but вѣ́ровать въ Бо́га believe in God)

Other instances of verbs requiring a dative are:—

жа́ловаться кому́ на когó to complain to A of B  
моли́ться кому́ за что́ to pray to someone for something

кла́няться кому́ to greet (to bow down to)

мсти́ть кому́ за что́ to take vengeance on somebody for something

напоми́нать что́ кому́ to remind somebody of something

учи́ть когó чему́ to teach somebody something

учи́ться чему́ to learn something



But only practice can supply a full knowledge of such usages.

e.g. *Чему вы смѣетесь?*

What are you making merry of?

*Я вѣрю только математическимъ доказательствамъ.*

I believe only mathematical proofs.

*Я смѣюсь надъ вашимъ высокомеріемъ.*

I smile at your arrogance.

*Отсѣль грозить мы будемъ Шведу.*

From this spot we shall threaten the Swede.

*Мы удивились его скорому возвращенію.*

We were astonished at his swift return.

*Я завидую вашему богатству.*

I envy your wealth.

*Я завидую Ротшильду.*

I envy Rothschild.

## VI. *The Instrumental.*

This case denotes the *instrument by which* something is done, or the *agent by whom* something is done.

Thus :—(1) It is used after passive verbs.

e.g. *Царь былъ помазанъ архіепіскопомъ.*

The Tsar was anointed by the archbishop.

*Царь былъ помазанъ мѣромъ.*

The Tsar was anointed with the chrism.

(2) It also denotes the means by which a thing is done or made.

e.g. *Деревья рубятъ топорами.*

Trees are cleft with axes.

(3) It is used predicatively (like the dative in Latin) after verbs of becoming, or *быть* in the past tense.

e.g. *Ивѣнъ былъ моимъ слугою.*

John used to be my servant.

*Онъ сдѣлался больнымъ.*

He made himself ill.

Hence such irregular concords may arise as: *онъ назвалъ меня дуракомъ* he called me a fool.

(4) It is used to denote the mode or manner where we in English should say "like . . ."

e.g. *Орелъ летѣлъ стрѣлою.*

The eagle flew like an arrow.

*Онъ воображаетъ себя великимъ государемъ.*

He fancies himself a mighty emperor.

(5) The instrumental is also used with words of measure.

e.g. *Онъ продолжалъ идти мѣрнымъ шагомъ.*

He continued to go at a regular pace.

*Море здѣсь глубиной въ десять саженъ.*

The sea is here 10 sazens deep.

*Температура больного повѣсилась двумя градусами.*

The patient's temperature has gone up two degrees.

*But* *Этотъ садъ на аршинъ шире твоего.*

This garden is an aršin broader than yours.

*Моё яблоко въ двадцать разъ слаще того.*

My apple is twenty times sweeter than that one.

(6) The instrumental is used with words of quality.

e.g. *Этотъ тюремщикъ добръ душою.*

This gaoler is kindly in soul (has a kindly soul).

(7) The instrumental is used to denote *time in which* something happens; e.g. *зимою* in the winter, *весною* in the spring, *ночью* at night, *утромъ* in the morning.

(8) Many verbs, especially those denoting *using, governing, naming*, are followed by the instrumental. These can only be acquired by practice.

Such are:	<i>пóльзоваться</i>	to use
	<i>назывáться</i>	to be called
	<i>владѣть</i>	to govern
	<i>гордѣть</i>	to boast of
	<i>жѣртвовать</i>	to sacrifice
	<i>прáвить</i>	to guide
	<i>слыть</i>	to be reputed as
	<i>избирáться</i>	to be elected

e.g. *Солдаты жѣртвуютъ жизнью за отчизну.*

Soldiers sacrifice their lives for their country.

*Я горжусь своими родителями.*

I boast of my parents.

*Его назначили (избрали) опекуномъ.*

They have appointed (chosen) him as guardian.

*Онъ не владѣетъ своимъ роднымъ языкомъ.*

He does not understand his own language.

## VII. *The Locative.*

In modern Russian this case is never used except with the prepositions *при, въ, о, на, по*. Hence it is often called the prepositional.

## § 70. TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

Governing one case only:—

Simple.	Adverbial.	Genitive.		Dative.		Instr.	Loc.	Verbal Prefixes.		
		Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.			Simple.	Loc.	Used with Nouns and Verbs.
про	сквозь	безъ	мимо	къ	вопреки	надъ	при	въ	подъ	воз
черезъ		до	около					до	предъ	вы
		изъ	позади					за	при	пере
		изъ-за	подлѣ					изъ	про	пре
		изъ-подъ	послѣ					на	съ	разъ
		отъ	ради					надъ	у	
		у	сверхъ					о		
			для					отъ		
			среди					по		
			кромѣ							
			кругомъ							

Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

за				за	Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.	
					безъ	черезъ
подъ				подъ		
предъ				предъ		

Governing Objective and Locative :—

въ					въ	
на					на	
о					о	

Governing Objective, Dative, Locative :—

по				по		по
----	--	--	--	----	--	----

Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

съ				съ		
----	--	--	--	----	--	--

Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—

				между		
--	--	--	--	-------	--	--

\* I. e. accusative of inanimate objects ; genitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -у, -ю of nouns in -и, -я.



## § 71. THE PREPOSITIONS.

*Preliminary.*

I. In order further to assert the relationships of nouns and verbs, as in other languages the cases are not sufficient. They have to be more accurately and extensively defined by means of prepositions.

II. Prepositions and particles are either simple or adverbial, e.g. in English “by” and “beside.”

III. Most simple prepositions are compounded with verbs; but *черезъ* through, *къ* to, *безъ* without, cannot be thus used; nor are *воз-* up, *вы-* out, *пере-* again, *пре-* in excess, used except with verbs.

IV. Most prepositions govern only one case, some govern two, and some three.

V. The prepositions and the cases they govern are all stated in the Table § 70.

VI. Prepositions governing the objective take the accusative (or nominative) of inanimate things, and the genitive of living things [v. § 69, III.].

In a few instances only the older practice survives of a preposition taking the accusative with nouns denoting a living being; e.g. the idiomatic use of *въ* in *въ гости*, *въ няньки*, to be a guest, nurse, etc.

VII. Monosyllabic prepositions preceding monosyllabic nouns (including under this designation dissyllabic nouns in liquids, e.g. *городъ*, *бѣрегъ* [v. § 5 (5)])

or dissyllabic nouns of the second declension often accent the preposition, especially in adverbial phrases.

e.g. **на́ по́ль** on to the floor

**на́ во́ду** on to the water

In older Russian this rule was much more general.  
[v. § 80.]

## § 72. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Three prepositions govern only the accusative:  
**черезъ** (or **чрезъ**), **про**, **сквозь**.

**про** means "for," "concerning."

e.g. **Всякъ про себѣ́, а Господь про все́хъ.**

Each for himself, but the Lord for all.

**Про когó говори́шь?**

Of whom are you speaking?

Combined with verbs it gives the idea of thoroughness.

e.g. **Прочита́ть** to read through.

**сквозь** right through.

e.g. **Гвоздь сквозь до́ску прошёлъ.**

The nail has gone right through (pierced) the board.

**Онъ пройде́тъ невреди́мымъ сквозь огóнь и во́ду.**  
He will pass through fire and water unscathed.

**Смотрѣ́ть на что сквозь па́льцы.**

To look through the finger (i.e. overlook).

**Онъ прошёлъ сквозь огóнь и во́ду и мѣ́дныя тру́бы.**

He passed through fire, water, and brazen tubes [proverb: i.e. every danger] [or **че́резъ . . .**].

чѣрезъ through and across.

e.g. Чѣрезъ рѣкѹ across the river.

Чѣрезъ стеклѡ вѣдно.

One can see [вѣдно it is visible] through glass.

Чѣрезъ него многіе пострадали.

Through him many have suffered.

Я у него буду чѣрезъ недѣлю.

I shall be with him in one week.

§ 73 (1). PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE ONLY.

*These prepositions always govern the genitive; not merely the objective case.*

безъ without.

e.g. Безъ денегъ without money.

Безъ надежды without hope.

близъ\* near.

e.g. Близъ города near the town.

Близъ моего мужа стояла Настасья.

Nastasya was standing near my husband.

вдоль along.

e.g. Вдоль улицы along the street.

вмѣсто† instead of.

e.g. Вмѣсто веселія горе было.

It was woe instead of joy.

внутри\* inside.

e.g. Внутри чемодана inside the portmanteau.

внѣ\* outside.

e.g. Внѣ Европы outside Europe.

\* Whence adjectives ближій, внутренній, внѣшній.

† Not to be confused with the adverb вмѣстѣ together; e.g. вмѣстѣ съ тобою together with you.

вѳзлѳ beside.

e.g. Вѳзлѳ пѳчи beside the stove,

вѳкрѳгъ *or* кругѳмъ round.

e.g. Вѳкрѳгъ цѳркѳи round the church.

дѳя for the purpose of.

e.g. Дѳя лѳчѳнѳя for the purpose of being healed.

до defines the limit "up to which."

e.g. До старѳсти дѳжилъ.

He lived up to old age.

Чѳтѳй ѳтъ начѳла до концѳ.

Read from the beginning to the end.

ѳтъ Лондона до Парѳжа.

From London to Paris.

До полѳдня.

Until mid-day *or* before mid-day.

До Рождествѳ Христѳва.

B.c., i.e. up to *or* before the birth of Christ.

До Царѳ Нѳколѳя Нѳколѳевичѳ.

Before Tsar Nicholas Nikolųyevič.

Нхъ бѳзѳло до десятѳ.

There were up to (*or* about) ten of them.

до in compound verbs gives a sense of finishing ;

e.g. дочѳтѳть to read to the end.

изъ from, out of.

e.g. Изъ огнѳ out of the fire.

Изъ дрѳжбы out of friendship.

изъ is scarcely ever used in measurements of time  
(*v. ѳтъ*).

изъ-за up out of.

e.g. Сѳ́лнце вѳ́шло изъ-за лѳ́су.

The sun rose out of the wood.

Изъ-за неѳ́ "Thanks to her . . ."

изъ-подѳ́ from under.

e.g. Изъ-подѳ́ менѳ́ вѳ́ли стулѳ́.

They took my chair from under me.

изъ in composition with verbs retains its original meaning.

Before heavy consonants it becomes изо; e.g. изожда́ть to await.

Before soft vowels it retains the ѳ́; e.g. изѳ́денный (мо́лю) moth-eaten.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded ис; e.g. истрѳ́тить to squander.

кро́мѳ́ besides.

e.g. Кро́мѳ́ такіхъ примѳ́ровѳ́.

Besides such examples.

Кро́мѳ́ лошадеѳ́ онѳ́ завѳ́л еще́ автомо́бѳ́ль.

Besides his horses he brought a motor.

Кро́мѳ́ тогѳ́ in addition to this.

The "gerundive" or undeclined participle, *исключѳ́я*, is used absolutely to mean "except, excepting"; e.g. *исключѳ́я англича́нѳ́ никако́и наро́дѳ́ свобѳ́денѳ́* excepting the English no nation is free.

ми́мо past an object.

e.g. Орѳ́ль летѳ́л ми́мо моего́ са́да.

The eagle flew past my garden.



о́коло about.

e.g. О́коло двора́ round about the courtyard.

О́коло пяти́ часо́въ about five o'clock.

вокру́гъ signifies rather "encircling" all the way round.

e.g. Вокру́гъ моего́ до́ма фрукто́вый садъ.

There is an orchard all round my house.

отъ out of, from.

e.g. Отъ княже́нія Влади́мира.

From the time of Vladímir's reign.

Я получи́лъ подáрокъ отъ ма́тери.

I received a present from my mother.

Я покрасне́лъ отъ стыда́.

I blushed for shame.

отъ, as distinguished from изъ, indicates the source whence, rather than motion whence.

e.g. Доро́га отъ Москвы́ до Петрогра́да.

The road from Moscow to Petrograd.

But Онъ при́ехалъ изъ Москвы́.

He arrived from Moscow.

отъ corresponds more with the Latin *ab*; изъ with *ex*.

When compounded with verbs, отъ, like изъ, retains its meaning, and changes to ото, отъ.

e.g. Ото́рва́ться to tear oneself free.

Отъ́ехать to drive away.

Отъ́ездъ departure.

подо́лъ means the same as во́змъ.

позади́ behind.

e.g. Позади́ дере́вни behind the village.

послѣ after (in time or order).

e.g. Послѣ ухóда отъ дóлжности.

After retirement from service.

Послѣ королѣи вошѣлъ егó слугá.

After the king his servant entered.

прóтивъ against or opposite to.

e.g. Прóтивъ дворцá стоить собóръ.

Opposite to the palace stands the cathedral.

Россія бóрется прóтивъ Нѣмцевъ.

Russia is fighting against the Germans.

ради for the sake of.

e.g. Ради твоѣй мáтери.

For the sake of your mother.

сверхъ besides.

e.g. Сверхъ рáзума beyond reason.

Сверхъ жáлованья, получáетъ нагрáду.

In addition to a salary, he gets an emolument.

Сверхъ тогó furthermore.

средѣи or посредѣи in the middle of.

e.g. Посредѣи óстрова in the middle of the island.

Other adverbial phrases are also used with the genitive, but need not be noticed here.

у means "at," "by" (of place).

e.g. У дѣлѣ at work.

У ногъ когó at one's feet.

у with the verb *есть* replaces the verb "to have."

e.g. У менѣ есть хлѣбъ. [v. § 87].

I have a loaf.

У себя ли бáринь ?

Is your master at home ?

у with the personal pronouns, or proper names, has much the same force as the Latin *apud* or the French *chez*.

e.g. У Петрóвыхъ всегда хорóший обѣдъ.

They dine well at the Petróvs.

In composition with verbs its use can hardly be profitably defined.

### § 73 (2). THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Of these there are only two.

къ can be used with some nouns to indicate approximate time.

e.g. Къ вѣчеру toward evening.

Otherwise къ merely amplifies the ordinary meaning of the dative "to" or "for."

e.g. Къ бѣрегу to the bank.

Пришлю́ кни́гу къ нему́.

I will send the book to him.

къ is never combined with verbs. When used with nouns, the consonant к is merely sounded in front, like l' and d' in French: "l'âme," "d'autres." Before dentals and gutturals къ is softened to х in pronunciation; e.g. къ тому́ is sounded хтому́; къ дому́, хдому́.

Before heavy initial consonants **къ** is sounded, and is sometimes written, **ко**.

e.g. **Ко двору́** to the courtyard.

Similar rules apply to **въ** and **съ**, which may be written and sounded **во** and **со**.

**Вопреки́** in spite of.

**Вопреки́ егó старáнямъ** despite his endeavours.

#### § 74. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

**надъ** means "above," "over."

e.g. **Надъ землёю** over the earth.

**Братъ верхъ надъ кѣмъ (чѣмъ)** to overcome someone.

**Божья воля надо мною.**

God's will over me.

**Бѣда́ виситъ надъ егó головой.**

Sorrow hangs over his head.

**между** may be added to this paragraph, as it is only occasionally used with the genitive. It means "between."

e.g. **Сидѣть между двухъ стульевъ — положёние Румы́нии.**

Sitting on the fence [between two chairs]—  
Roumania's situation.

**Между двумя́ деревьями было́ окно́.**

There was a window between two trees.

It can also have a derived meaning, "among."

## § 75. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE LOCATIVE.

One preposition, **при**, governs the locative and no other case. **при** originally meant "at."

e.g. **При до́мѣ** near, by the house.

**При ко́мѣ** in the presence of.

**При свидѣ́теляхъ** before witnesses.

**При Никола́ѣ Алекса́ндровичѣ.**

In the reign (*or* time) of Nicholas Aleksándrovič.

**Онъ при заво́дѣ.**

He works in the factory.

**Онъ былъ адюта́нтомъ при Ско́болеѣ.**

He was adjutant to Skóbolev.

Also causal—

e.g. **При бога́тствѣ** возно́симся.

In prosperity we enhance ourselves.

The meaning of **при**, when compounded with verbs, is best learnt by practice; no rule can be conveniently stated.

§ 76. **подъ**, **предъ**, and **за**.

These govern the accusative and instrumental; the former when motion is implied, the latter when a state of rest is implied (cf. *in* in Latin or German).

I. **за** primarily means "behind," also "beyond."

With the accusative:—

e.g. **Ѣхать за гра́ницу.**

To travel beyond the frontier, i.e. abroad.

**Мнѣ да́вно за́ сорокъ лѣтъ.**

I am long past forty years old.



За́ десять лѣтъ своѣй слѹжбы пріобрѣ́лъ больші́ую  
о́пытность.

In ten years' service he gained great experi-  
ence.

Notice also :—

Мы сади́лись за сто́лъ.

We were sitting down at the table.

Also with verbs of "holding," "grasping."

e.g. Егó взяли́ за́ руку.

They seized him by the hand.

Меня́ держáли за плéчи.

They held me by the shoulders.

In combination with что, за means "what a . . . !"

e.g. Что́ за шумъ ! what a noise !

Also "for the sake of."

e.g. Мученики́ умерли́ за́ истину́.

The martyrs died for truth.

Моли́сь за́ отца́.

Pray for your father.

And "in price."

e.g. Прóдалъ кни́гу за́ четы́ре рубля́.

I sold a book for four roubles.

With the instrumental :—

e.g. Э́тотъ господи́нь живётъ за́ грани́цею.

This gentleman lives abroad.

За́ са́домъ behind the garden.

Я сидѣ́лъ за́ столóмъ.

I sat at the table.

Or "giving the reason."

e.g. За неприѣздомъ отца мы отложили нашу поѣздки.

On account of my father's non-arrival we postponed our excursion.

Зачѣмъ? why?

Also with verbs of "fetching."

e.g. Меня послали за сахаромъ.

They sent me to fetch the sugar.

за, in composition with verbs, expresses an incipient action [v. § 59, VI.], but sometimes a completed action, e.g. заснѣть go to sleep, заплатить to pay up; in composition with nouns, expresses "at the back of," "behind"; e.g. загородный suburban (also пригородъ suburb).

II. подъ properly means "under"; with the accusative implying motion, with the instrumental static.

e.g. Я бросилъ его подъ столъ.

I threw him under the table.

Онъ лежитъ подъ печью.

He is lying under the stove.

In regard to *time*.

e.g. Это случилось подъ вечеръ.

This happened in the evening (cf. Latin *sub vespere*).

Also in derivative senses.

e.g. Подъ этими условіями не могу подписаться.

Under these conditions I cannot give my signature.

III. предъ or передъ means "before" (of place, and of time).

The accusative and instrumental similarly refer to motion or rest.

e.g. Я явѣлся пѣредъ судѣѣй.

I appeared before the judges.

Пѣредъ ворóтами стоѣтъ два столбá.

In front of the gates there stand two columns.

Предъ закóномъ всѣ равны.

All are equal before the law.

*Observe* the adverbs въ передѣ in front, въ передъ forward, на передѣ beforehand.

подъ and предъ, when compounded with verbs, conserve their meaning.

e.g.	поднимáть	поднѣть	raise
	подпирáть	подперѣть	prop up
	представáть	предстáть	stand before
	представля́ть	предстáвить	to present

Like отъ, подъ and предъ keep the ъ before soft vowels, and предъ changes to преду before heavy consonants.

e.g. Предъявѣть to present.

Предусмотрѣть to foresee.

Подъѣдáть to nibble, eat from below.

Предусмотрѣть всѣ мелочи.

To foresee all details.

Предъявѣть вѣксель къ взыскáнiю.

To present a bill for payment.

Онъ подѣхалъ на конѣ.

He came by on horseback.

§ 77. THE PREPOSITIONS **въ**, **о**, AND **на**.

These govern the accusative and locative; the accusative as usual relating to motion, the locative to a state of rest.

I. **въ** primarily means "in." It is sounded as a part of the following word, like **къ** and **съ**, and similarly may, if the following word have heavy initial consonants, be altered to **во**.

**въ** with the *accusative* is primarily "into."

e.g. (1) **Ивѣнъ вошѣлъ въ кѡмнату.**

John went into the room.

**Я ѳздилъ въ Оренбуръгъ.**

I travelled to Orenbúrg.

(2) It is used in statements of time.

e.g. **Во время путешѣствія я скучалъ.**

I was bored during the journey.

**Въ пять лѣтъ окончú мой трудъ.**

In five years I shall finish my work.

**Въ понедѣльникъ on Monday.**

(Distinguish **по понедѣльникамъ** every Monday.)

**Въ девять часѡвъ at nine o'clock.**

**Трѣжды въ день three times a day.**

(Distinguish **въ девѣтомъ часу** in the ninth hour;

i.e. between eight and nine.)

(3) And in statements of price, measure, etc.

e.g. **Дорога въ восемнадцать вѣрстъ.**

A road eighteen versts long.

(4) One idiomatic use with the accusative plural should be remarked, viz. :—

Меня звали въ гости.

They invited me as a guest.

Онъ пошёлъ въ офицеры.

He has become an officer.

Постригусь въ монахи.

I shall take the tonsure as a monk.

*In this idiomatic use the accusative, and not the genitive, is used as the objective case [v. § 71, VI.].*

(5) Similarly :—

Сынъ въ отца.

The son is like his father.

въ with the *locative* means (1) “in.”

e.g. Бáринъ въ столóвой.

Master is in the dining-room.

(2) “in,” in measurements of time.

e.g. Въ сентябрь мѣсяцѣ in September.

Въ тѣсяча девятьсотъ пятнадцатомъ году in 1915.\*

(3) “in,” in measurements of distance.

e.g. Моя дáча отсюда въ трёхъ верстахъ.

My estate is three versts away.

(4) After certain verbs.

e.g. Кáяться въ грѣхáхъ to repent one's sins.

Признавáться въ оши́бкѣ to confess a mistake.

Обвиня́ть когó въ убíйствѣ to convict of murder.

\* In these phrases *роду* cannot be omitted, and no other locative form is admissible.



In composition **въ** conserves its meaning.

e.g. **Входи́ть** to enter.

The original form **во** is kept in some accented adverbs; e.g. **во́все** altogether. [v. § 80.]

With verbs commencing with a soft vowel **въ** is still hard and written **въ**.

e.g. **Въѣ́хать** (*vyékhət'*) to drive in.

II. The preposition **на** primarily means "on."

*With the accusative.*

e.g. (1) **Я ходи́лъ на пло́щадь.**

I went on to the square.

**Палъ тумáнь на сыру́ю зéмлю.**

A mist fell on the damp earth.

**Я положи́лся на теб́я.**

I relied on you.

(2) In reference to time.

**На четвёртый день** on the fourth day.

**Отпущу́ теб́я на три часа́.**

I will let you go for three hours (до трёхъ часа́ until 3 o'clock).

(3) In reference to the effect produced.

**Ку́шайте на здоро́вье.**

Eat for your health, i.e. may it do you good.

**Я слéдовалъ ему́ на злó.\***

I followed him to do him hurt.

---

\* *От на́ зло.*

- (4) "Against," "in respect of."

Я сердился на Григорія.

I got angry with Gregory.

Не жалуйся на твоего брата.

Do not make complaints with respect to  
(against) your brother.*With the locative.*e.g. (1) Ваша книга на столѣ.  
Your book is on the table.

- (2) In words denoting time.

На Рождествѣ.

On Christmas day.

- (3) In words indicating the points of the compass.

На сѣверѣ in the North.

- (a) Мой братъ женился на французкѣ
- 
- племянница которой выйдетъ замужъ за
- 
- русскаго подданнаго.

My brother has married a Frenchwoman  
whose niece is going to marry a Russian  
subject.

- (β) Играли въ карты.

They were playing cards.

Играли въ шахматы.

They were playing chess (i.e. a *game*).*But* Играли на скрипкѣ.They were playing the violin (the musical  
*instrument*).

(γ) *Observe* на Русіи or въ Россіи in Russia.

(Русь is a poetical form.)

In composition на has no meaning limited enough to be stated in these pages.

III. The preposition о (объ before vowels, обо before very heavy initial consonants) primarily means "on" or "against."

*With the accusative.*

(1) Онъ удáрился о кáмень he hit against a stone

(2) Объ éту пóру at this time.

*With the locative.*

(1) Concerning, about.

e.g. Мы говорíли о твоёмъ несча́стíи.

We were speaking of your misfortune.

(2) Of time (when the time is not exactly stated).

e.g. О Пáсхѣ at Easter.

(3) With numerals, when the objects enumerated are constituents of something else, and not accidental.

e.g. Стулъ о трѣхъ нóжкахъ a chair with three feet.

(But Стѣна въ три аршіна a wall 3 aršins high.)

In composition о indicates the completion of the act, and some generality.

e.g. Обойтí to go round (and survey).

Огляну́ться to glance round.

Before heavy consonants it can take the full form обо; e.g. ободрáть, обдира́ть to flay.

Before verbs beginning in soft vowels it is written and sounded *объ*.

e.g. *Объяснить* to explain.

*Объятие, объёмъ*, an embrace—the capacity, contents.

Before verbs beginning with *и, ъ + и* are fused into *ы*; e.g. *обыграть* to beat at play, cf. *сыграть* from *съ + играть* to play (a piece of music or at cards).

As a preposition *объ* is the correct form before words beginning with a vowel, and occasionally *обо* before words with heavy initial consonants.

### § 78. THE PREPOSITIONS *по* AND *съ*.

I. *по*, with the accusative, states the limit in space or time, or the purpose of the action.

e.g. *По край свѣта* to the edge of the world.

*Обнажи́ ру́ку по́-локоть.*

Bare your arm up to the elbow.

*Мы пробудемъ здѣсь по Пасху.*

We shall stay here till Easter.

*По сіе время я ничего не слыхалъ.*

Up to now I have heard nothing.

*По вѣкъ свой (или по смѣръть) не забуду.*

I will not forget (for all my life) up to my death.

*Я шёлъ въ лѣсъ по малину.*

I went into the wood (to gather) raspberries.

*Пошли́ по́ воду.*

Send for water.

*Distributively*, *по два*, *по три*, *по четыре* [v. § 62, I. and IV. (2)].

*Notice*—по тѹ стѡрону, по правѹю (рѹку), по лѣвую,  
that side, to the right, to the left.

по with the dative indicates extensive space, in  
which something happens.

- e.g. (1) По горáмъ over the hills.  
По гóроду through the town.  
Плыть по́ морю to sail the seas.  
Эта травá растётъ по овра́гамъ.  
This herb grows in the ravines.

- (2) Distributively—  
По утра́мъ every morning.  
По пяти́ in fives (and with every number,  
except два, три, четы́ре). [v. § 62, IV.(2).]  
По нача́мъ every night.  
По среда́мъ every Wednesday.

- (3) “According to.”  
По-мо́ему\* in my opinion.  
По ста́рому in the old-fashioned way.  
По чи́ну according to rank.  
Почему́? why?  
Потому́ что because.

по with the locative.

- (1) With words of time, means “after.”

- e.g. Потóмъ thereupon.†  
По рождествѣ́ after Christmas.  
По Петрѣ́ Вели́комъ after Peter the Great.

---

\* In this single phrase моемѹ is accented мо́ему. So, too, по тво́ему, своему́. Thus:—

По моемѹ́ процессу́ вы́шло по-мо́ему.  
My law-suit came off to my liking.

† Whence потóмки, потóмство descendants,



(2) "On account of."

e.g. Женá по мѹжѣ назывáется.

A woman bears her husband's name.

По кóмъ вы въ траурѣ?

For whom are you in mourning?

по in composition confers a diminutive sense to the verb [v. § 59, VI.], e.g. поглядѣвать to glance here and there; or indicates the completion of the actions, e.g. побить to smite down, послать to send at last.

II. (1) съ with the accusative is used in general measurements of space and time.

e.g. Рублѣй съ пятóкъ издержáлъ.

I spent about five roubles.

Тамъ я прóжилъ съ мѣсяцъ.

I stayed there about a month.

Онъ рóстомъ съ отцá.

He is about as tall as his father.

Вѣрсть со сто (съ сотню) бѹдетъ.

It will be about 100 versts away.

(2) съ with the genitive has the primal meaning "down from."

e.g. Онъ сошѣлъ съ плáтформы.

He left the platform.

(изъ implies rather "away from," in space: e.g. поѣздъ двинулся изъ Москвѣ the train moved out of Moscow.)

Онá сошла съ умá.

She has gone mad (literally, out of her mind).

Съ тѣхъ поръ from that time.

Жду со дня нá день.

I waited from day to day

It may also have a causal meaning, like *отъ*.

e.g. *Съ тоскѣи* from melancholy.

*съ* with the instrumental has an entirely different meaning, i.e. "with," "accompanying."

e.g. *Я придѣ съ супругою (супругой)*.

I will arrive with my wife.

*Онъ дѣлалъ это съ радостью.*

He was doing this with pleasure.

*Онъ человѣкъ съ умомъ.*

He is a man with sense.

*Совсѣмъ* quite.

*Кто говорилъ съ Кузьмой?*

Who was speaking to Kuz'ma?

In composition *съ* can have either the meaning "from" or "with," e.g. *снимать* to take away, *съѣздить* to travel away; or *соединять* to unite, *сочинить* to compose, *сдѣлать* to finish doing.

Before soft vowels *съ* is retained entire, e.g. *съѣдать* to devour; or, before *и*, amalgamates, e.g. *сыскать* to search (*съ-искать*); or remains as *со*, e.g. *соединять*.

### § 79. THE VERBAL PREFIXES *воз*, *вы*, *пере*, *пре*, *разъ*.

*воз* adds the sense of "up" to a verb.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded *вос*, e.g. *воспитать* to educate.

Before verbs beginning with *с* + a consonant it is, however, written *воз* and sounded *вос*, e.g. *возстание* insurrection.

In Old Slavonic the form was *възь*, hence in modern Russian *въ* and *въо* are also met with.

e.g. *взлетѣть* to fly up  
*вздуť цѣны* to inflate prices

Or before heavy consonants—

e.g. *вздираť*, but *взодраť* to tear up  
*взирáть* (for *взирáть*), but *воззрѣть* to look up  
 (Cf. *сжечь*,\* but *сожгý* to burn utterly.)

Before verbs beginning with soft vowels the *з* is pronounced and written hard.

e.g. *възѣзжáть* to drive up

As with other similar prepositions, *ъ* + *и* after is fused into *ы*.

e.g. *возъ* + *имѣть* becomes *возымѣть* to conceive  
 (doubts, fears, etc.)

Similarly *раз-*, *разь-*, *разы-*, *разо-*, *рас-*.

*вы* probably means “out,” and signifies the completion of an act.

e.g. *выболѣть* to become utterly ill  
*выбѣжать* (perfective) *выбѣгáть* (imperfective)  
 to run out [v. § 59, IV.]  
*выгнать* drive out, *выговáть* (imperfective)

*вы* always takes the tonic accent except as stated in § 59, I. (3), II., and IV., when the imperfective is the

---

\* Sounded *žžeč*.

iterative of the simple verb, in which the imperfective retains the original accent.

e.g. **вы́просить** to question, **выпра́шивать**  
**вы́гадать** to guess, **выга́дывать**

**пере** implies repetition, or change.

e.g. **переду́мать** to reconsider  
**переби́ть** to kill many, to massacre  
**перебыва́ть** to be in many places  
**передопроси́ть** to re-examine  
**перела́мывать** to break to pieces  
**переписа́ть** to copy  
**пересма́тривать** to review, survey ; **пересмо́треть**  
revision

**пре** implies excellence, and is nearly the same as **предь** ; with adjectives it forms a superlative.

e.g. **прелюбе́зный** very kindly  
**превыша́ть** to surpass  
**презира́ть** to despise

But it is often merely a bye-form of **пере**.

e.g. **превраща́ть, преврати́ть** to transform

**разъ** has a motion of scattering or dissipation.

e.g. **растека́ть** to flow (in various directions)  
**разстана́вливать** to station people apart  
**разы́гривать** to play out to the end  
**разъѐздъ** a departure (of many people in  
different directions)  
**разува́ть** to take off one's shoes  
**разсе́ивать** to sow (scatter seed)  
**разсма́тривать** to survey all round

### § 80. THE ACCENTUATION OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

The general rule is that, as in other languages, prepositions are proclitics, i.e. atonic words pronounced with their noun, which is accented; e.g. "in-the-house," "on-the-table," "въ домѹ," "на столѣ." But in older Russian, and to a slight extent in modern Russian, certain of the simple prepositions—not the adverbial prepositions—when used with monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, are accented, the noun becoming the *enclitic*.

e.g. на́ бокъ on the side

Further, when particles are used in compound verbs, in some cases the particle takes the accent, the verb becoming enclitic. This *only* applies—

- (1) to the prefix вы [v. § 79 and § 59, IV.];
- (2) to monosyllabic verbs [v. § 49 and § 52, (1) and (2)]

and generally only to the past participle passive.

e.g.	прожи́ть	про́житый	to live through
	нача́ть	нача́ль*	to begin
	избра́ть	избранъ	to select
	наня́ть	наня́ль and наня́ть	to hire †
	назва́ть	на́званъ	called
	подда́ть	подданный	a subject (of a State)

This list contains some of the most important phrases in which the old accentuation of the preposition

\* But past part. pass. нача́тый.

† So, too, *all* dissyllabic compounds of -ль.



survives. It will be observed the words are nearly all monosyllables, or dissyllables with liquids, such as бѣрегъ shore [v. § 5 (5)], or dissyllabic feminines, and that the usage is practically confined to the accusative.

Verbs that accent the preposition are also monosyllabic.

The forms accenting the particle are mostly used in set phrases, like adverbs.

- e.g. на́ бокъ (or на бо́къ) to one side  
 на́ берегъ (or на бѣрегъ) to the shore  
 на́ голо (of weapons) naked  
 на́ голову (or на го́лову) on to the head  
 на́ душу (or на ду́шу) into the mind  
 на́ землю (or на зѣмлю) on to the earth  
 на́ зло (or на злѡ) in despite  
 на́ полъ on to the floor  
 на́ поле (or на по́ле) on to the field  
 на́ ночь for a night  
 на́смѣхъ (to hold up) to ridicule  
 на́чисто (to wipe) clean

So, too, in verbs.

- e.g. на́нялъ I hired  
 за́нялъ (за́нять) busied  
 прѣданный devoted  
 прѡданный betrayed  
 избранъ selected  
 названный called

Similarly with the *negative* не: не́ даль,  
 не́ бралъ, не́ было, не́ пилъ.

- не́релилъ (or перели́лъ) overflowed  
 ѡтдалъ (ѡддѡл) he has given away  
 прѡжилъ he has lived through

Other instances are :—

по́ лугу (по лѹгу) over the meadow  
 по́ морю (по мѳрю) over the sea  
 по́ берегу (по бѳерѳу) along the bank  
 вѳвсе at all  
 изъ лѳсу out of the wood  
 о́ землю (о зѳмлю) against the ground  
 за́ ногу by the leg  
 у́ моря (у мѳря) by the sea

No very general rule can be stated. In modern Russian the preposition is sometimes accented before simple monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, mostly when used with the accusative.

### § 81. THE NUMERALS.

Under this head it is proposed to enumerate some idiomatic uses of the numerals.

#### I. *The date (числѳ), days (дни), etc.*

The days of the week (недѳля) are :—

Поведѳльникъ	Monday (Недѳля, Church Slavonic for Sunday)
Втѳрникъ	Tuesday
Средѳ	Wednesday (i.e. the middle)
Четвѳргъ	Thursday (i.e. the fourth day)*
Пѳтница	Friday (i.e. the fifth day)
Суббѳта	Saturday (i.e. the Sabbath)
Воскресѳнь	Sunday (literally "Resurrection")
Недѳля	the week

---

\* In ecclesiastical parlance, четвѳргѳкъ.

The months (мѣсяцъ) are :—

Январь	January	(января́, etc., accenting termination)
Февраль	February	(февраля́, etc.)
Мартъ	March	(марта́, etc.)
Апрѣль	April	(апрѣля́, etc.)
Май	May	(ма́я, etc.)
Июнь	June	(ию́ня, etc.)
Июль	July	(ию́ля, etc.)
Августъ	August	(августа́, etc.)
Сентябрь	September	(сентября́, etc.)
Октябрь	October	(октября́, etc.)
Ноябрь	November	(ноября́, etc.)
Декабрь	December	(декабря́, etc.)

The calendar of the Greek Church is still used in Russia, and is now thirteen days behind the Julian or Western calendar.

Instances are given of the use of these words, illustrating the rules.

e.g. **Котóрое (какóе) числó у насъ сего́дня?**

What is the date to-day?

**Шесты́надцатое января́.**

The 16th of January.

**Пя́тница двáдцать пята́го (пята́е) марта́.**

Friday the 25th of March.

*Do not use capitals in designating the days and months.*

When the year is mentioned, the year and number all go into the genitive, unless the day is named.

e.g. Средá (въ средý) тpидцать пёрвое мáрта тýсяча  
восемь-сóтъ сóрокъ восьмóго гóда.  
Wednesday the 31st March 1848.

*But* Девятнáдцатаго февралí тýсяча восемьсóтъ  
шестдесáтъ пёрваго гóда.  
The 19th of February 1861.

These would be commonly abbreviated:—

e.g. Средá (въ средý) 31-ое мáрта 1848 г.  
19-го февралí 1861 г.

Generally both dates are indicated.

e.g. 25/12 iii. 15.

II. *Age.* The following instances illustrate the rules:—

Скóлько Ивáшку (Ивáну) лѣтъ?

How old is Iváško?

Какóй вóзраст Áнны Петрóвны?

How old is Ánna Petróvna?

Ей шестьдесáтъ лѣтъ.

She is sixty years old.

Она́ родилáсь восьмóго мáя тýсяча восемьсóтъ  
сóрокъ вторóго гóда.

She was born on the 8th May 1842

Емý идѣтъ двáдцать пёрвый годъ

He is in his twenty-first year.

Мнѣ тpидцать лѣтъ óтpоду.

I am thirty years old.

Емý бóльше двáдцати-восьми лѣтъ

He is over twenty-eight.

Емý ужé зá сорокъ лѣтъ.

He is over forty.

III. In forming compound nouns and adjectives in which the first element is a numeral, the rule is to use the genitive of the numeral, e.g. *двухъ-этажный* two-storeyed; *двугривенникъ*\* twenty copecks; *трѣхъ-головый змѣй* a three-headed dragon; *четырёхсотый* the 400th; *двадцатилѣтний* twenty years old; *пятиугольникъ* pentagon, etc.; except *тысячелѣtie* millennium, and compounds with *сто*, such as *столѣtie* century.

#### IV. *The time of day.*

The Russian for hour is *часъ*; for a watch or clock *часы* (plural).

The following sentences give the rules:—

*Который теперъ часъ на вашихъ часахъ?*

What time is it by your watch?

*Сколько теперъ времени?* What is the time now?

*Сколько пробило?* What time was it that struck?

*Теперъ два часа.* It is now two o'clock.

*Сейчасъ шесть часовъ.* It is now six o'clock.

*Сейчасъ не больше семи часовъ.*

It is not more than seven o'clock.

*Сейчасъ одна минута пятаго.*

It is one minute past four.

*Сейчасъ четверть пятаго.* It is a quarter past four.

*Сейчасъ половина пятаго.* It is half past four.

*Сейчасъ тридцать девять третьяго.*

It is 39 minutes past two.

*Сейчасъ три четверти третьяго.*

It is a quarter to three.

---

\* *дву* Old Russian for *двухъ*.



Сейчасъ безъ четверти девять.

It is a quarter to nine.

Сейчасъ половина одиннадцатаго.

It is half past ten.

Сейчасъ безъ десяти (мину́тъ) двѣнадцать.

It is ten minutes to twelve.

Онъ уѣхалъ въ со́рокъ девяти́ послѣ четырёхъ.

He went away at 4.49.

### V. *Fractions.*

There is little to add under this head, but the student must specially note the compounds with полъ, полу, a half. полъ as a regular noun signifies sex or half.\*

e.g. мужско́й полъ the male sex

пополáмъ by halves

(1) When the compound signifies half of a whole, he nominative has пол- with the substantive in the genitive; the other cases are declined regularly with the prefix полу-.

e.g. полчасá half an hour, полу́часа, полу́часу, etc.

полверсты́ half a verst, полуверсты́, полуверстѣ́

Thus, too, по́лдень mid-day, по́лночь midnight; полу́дня, полу́ночи, etc.

After the preposition по, the locative of по́лдень is полу́дни (a relic of the time when день was a feminine like кость); e.g. нѣско́лько мину́тъ по полу́дни a few minutes after noon.

Thus, too, полтора́ [v. § 62, IV. (8)].

---

\* Distinguish полъ floor, and пола́ skirt.

It is most important to distinguish полднѣя, полно́чи, half a day, half a night, which signify duration, not a point of time.

In these words *only* the first element is declined, the second already being in the genitive.

e.g. Я бо́дрствовалъ полднѣя, полно́чи, полчасá, etc.

I sat up half a day, half a night, half an hour, etc.

In older Russian, as in German, there were other compounds with полу-, for  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $3\frac{1}{2}$ , etc., viz. полтретьяго,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ , etc.

These are obsolete. Modern Russian, like English, says два съ полови́ной, etc. [v. § 62, IV. (8).]

e.g. Послѣ полуминуты́ этой рабóты она́ устáла.

After half a minute of this work she was tired.

In this connection the word сýтки, сýтокъ, may be noticed, meaning the whole day, i.e. 24 hours, including день day and ночь night.

(2) Where "half" is used loosely, and not in terms of strict measurement.

These are compounds prefixed with полу- invariable.

e.g. полуóстровъ	a peninsula
полумѣсяць	a crescent moon
полутóмъ	a half-volume
(but полтóма, полутóма	half of a volume)
полу-оффицiальный	semi-official, etc.

VI. *Russian money.*

The unit is the рубль (рублѣ) or цѣлковый, worth about two shillings. [v. § 4 (9).]

The divisions are as follows:—

90	соpекs	девяно́сто копѣекъ	ог	де́вять	грѣвeнь
80	„	во́семьдесятъ	„	во́семь	„
70	„	се́мьдесятъ	„	се́мь	„
60	„	шестьдeсѣтъ	„	шесть	„
50	„	пѣтьдeсѣтъ	„	полти́на	ог полти́нникъ
40	„	со́рокъ	„	че́тыре	грѣвенника
30	„	три́дцать	„	три	„
25	„	два́дцать пѣтъ	„	че́тверта́къ	
20	„	два́дцать	„	двугрѣвенный	
15	„	пѣтна́дцать	„	пѣти́-алты́нный	
10	„	де́сятъ	„	грѣвенникъ	
5	„	пѣтъ	„	пѣтачѣкъ	
3	„	три копѣйки	„	алты́нъ*	
2	„	двѣ	„	грошъ	
1	„	копѣйка			
$\frac{1}{2}$	„	полкопѣйка	„	де́нежка	
$\frac{1}{4}$	„	че́твертъ копѣйки	„	полу́шка	

VII. *Frequencies.*

Besides *одна́жды*, etc., there are some other locutions that should be noticed.

(1) In the multiplication table *еди́ножды* is used instead of *одна́жды*, and *че́тырежды* is retained for this purpose. From five onwards the instrumental of the numeral is used, but is accented *пѣтью*, *ше́стью*, *во́семью*, *де́вятью*, *оди́ннадцатю*, etc., and *not* on the ultimate, as usual.

\* Obsolete.

(2) Before comparatives the forms used are вдвое, втрое, вчетверо, впятеро . . . въ десятеро; and thenceforward въ одиннадцать разъ, etc.

e.g. Москвѣ по пространству въ двадцать семь разъ больше Сѣрпухова.

Moscow in extent is twenty-one times bigger than Sѣrpukhov.

VIII. A note should be added that one cardinal has become obsolete, namely тѣма or тма 10,000 (except in some phrases, and as an expression for a multitude). There is a derivative, тѣмникъ a commander of 10,000, and тматмѹщій, "multitudinous."

#### IX. Cards.

The names of the suits and the cards (карты, feminine) may be useful to the student.

The four suits (масть, feminine, third declension) are: hearts черви (червѣй, feminine, third declension); diamonds бѹбны (бѹбонь, feminine); spades пики (пикъ, feminine), and трѣфы (трефъ, feminine) clubs. Trumps are козырь (mas.); a game without trumps игра въ безкозыряхъ. A trick is взятка, взяточка; игрокъ the player.

The cards in each suit are:—

тузъ ace	шестѣрка six	валѣтъ knave
двѹйка deuce	семѣрка seven	дѣма queen
трѹйка three	осьмѣрка eight	король king
четвѣрка four	дѣвятка nine	
пятѣрка five	дѣсятка ten	

e.g. король червѣй; пятѣрка бубѣнь; трѹйка пикъ; дѣвятка трѣфъ.

*Notice* the phrases: играть, сыграть (perfective) въ карты; проиграть to lose; выиграть to win (imperfectives проигрывать, выигрывать).

## § 82. THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative Pronouns.*

These are used as in English, *кто* referring to persons, like “who”; *что* to inanimate objects and neuters like “what,” and *ко́торый* corresponding to “which.”

*Note*, however, that in English the genitive precedes the noun by which it is governed; in Russian it follows. [v. § 69, IV. (3).]

e.g. John's house. *До́мъ Ива́на.*

Thus: *Въ до́мъ ко́торо́го мужика́ ты вошёлъ?*

Into which peasant's house did you go?

II. *The Relative Pronouns.*

As in English, the interrogative and relative are now identical in form.

*кто* is used when the subject is a person, or in correlative and indefinite sentences, answering to *то́тъ*, *вся́кій*, *всѣ*.

e.g. *То́му, кто лжётъ, не вѣ́рятъ.*

A liar is not believed.

*Всѣ, кто прѣ́были, изуми́лись.*

All who arrived were astounded.

*что* is similarly used, when the generality is not personal.

e.g. *Всё что ты сказа́лъ—дура́чество.*

All you have said is folly.



Otherwise, for nouns **ко́рый** is used; and, as always in Russian, the géntive follows and never precedes.

e.g. Опáсности, ко́рымъ я подвергáлся.

The dangers I have risked.

Домъ, крýша ко́раго снесенá вѣтромъ.

The house the roof of which has been carried off by the wind.

како́й may be substituted, where the sense allows; it means "such as."

*Observe.*—The relative is *never* omitted as in English. But in common parlance **что** in the nominative tends to replace **кто** and **ко́рый** for all numbers and genders. This is not an admitted literary use.

e.g. Э́то тотъ са́мый ни́щій, что приходи́лъ къ вамъ у́тромъ.

This is the same beggar as visited you in the morning.

### III. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are of two kinds; first, **кто** and **что**, etc., unaccented (cf. in Greek *τις, τι*, contrasted with *τίς, τί*), and next, compounded pronouns with **то**, **ни**, and other particles. [v. § 85 on negative sentences.]

e.g. Всѣ что ни есть.\*

Anything whatsoever.

Ско́лько ни рабóтали.

However much they worked.

\* **ни** as compared with **не** is like the Latin *nē*, Greek *μή*, e.g. *πᾶν ὅ,τι ἂν ᾖ* or *μὴ ᾖ* whatever it may [not] be.

Кѣмъ бы ты ни родился, ты всётаки обязанъ повиноваться закону.

Whatever you were born, you must obey the law.

Кто-нибудь.

Whoever it may be.

Кто-нибудь пусть принесётъ мнѣ стаканъ воды.

Let somebody bring me a glass of water.

(будь imperative of быть; v. § 57, II. and 41, VI.)

The distinction between какой-то... and какой ни is almost identical with the English "some" and "any": someone (but I don't know who exactly); anyone (and there is no discrimination nor knowledge of any individual).

#### IV. *The Reciprocal Pronouns.*

To express "each other," "one another," there are two phrases: другъ друга, одинъ другой. другъ друга is used for *all* genders and numbers. The latter part of the phrase is varied, to be in agreement with the verb or sentence.

e.g. Онѣ ненавидѣли другъ друга.

They hated each other.

Онѣ спорили другъ съ другомъ.

They quarrelled with each other.

другъ дружку (from дружка, feminine) is popularly also in use.

But with regard to *things*, the usual phrase is *одинъ другой*, both of which are declined in full.

e.g. *Волны сходились и разбѣгались борясь одна съ другою.*

The waves met and parted, fighting one another.

V. *The Negative Pronouns* [v. § 85 and § 41, VII.].

In Russian, negatives are doubled, but do not cancel each other.\* There is no means of expressing in Russian "I did *not* see nobody."

e.g. *Никакой нѣ было причины къ его уходу.*

There was no reason.

All negative pronouns are resolved when governed by a preposition. [v. § 41, VII.]

e.g. *Ни къ какому изъ вышеуказанныхъ примѣровъ это не подходитъ.*

This does not comply with any of the previous examples.

The only apparent exception is when the second negative negates a different verb or a noun or adjective.

e.g. *Я не считаю его неучтивымъ.*

I do not consider him impolite.

*Никто не можетъ не узвать его милосердія.*

No one can not-recognise (fail to recognise) his clemency.

---

\* E.g. in Greek *οὐδείς οὐκ ἄσικται* no one has come, but *οὐκ ἔπαθεν οὐδέν* could mean, as in English, "he did not experience nothing, but..."

## § 83. THE RUSSIAN APPELLATIVES.

Under this head a few notes will be found, as to the Russian methods of speaking to others, writing to others, and addressing letters.

I. *Conversation.*

Intimate friends and relatives use the pronoun ты; the politer form is вы. The Russian for "tutoyer," "dutzen," is тыкать.

вы takes a predicative adjective in the plural.

e.g. вы очень любезны you are very kind (*unlike* the French "vous êtes très aimable")

But a noun following is in the singular, as in French, e.g. вы мой лучший другъ you are my best friend.

Servants when speaking of their masters use the 3rd person plural.

e.g. Дóма-ли бáринъ (или бáрышня)?

Is your master (mistress) at home?

Онѣ ушли́.

He (she) has gone out.

Russians in addressing one another use not the family name, but the Christian name and patronymic.

Russians have three names: the Christian name, the patronymic, i.e. the father's name, and the family name.

e.g. Лёвъ Николаевичъ Толсто́й.

The "patronymic" ends in **-овичъ** (**-евичъ**) or **-овъ** (**-евъ**) (for the lower classes) in the masculine,\* and **-овна** (**-евна**) and **-ова** (**-ева**) in the feminine.

The Christian name is called **имя**, the patronymic **отчество**, the family name **фамілія**.

e.g. **Какъ зовѹтъ васъ по имени, отчеству, фаміліи ?**  
**Какъ ваше имя, (ваше) отчество, (ваша)**  
**фамілія ?**

In ordinary narration and conversation all classes are designated by the name and patronymic.

e.g. **При Николаѣ Алексѣандровичѣ.**  
 In the reign of Nicholas II.

**Вчера я встрѣтилъ Марью Алексѣевну.**

Equivalent to "yesterday I met Mary," or  
 "yesterday I met Mrs. or Miss . . ."

The Russian equivalents for Mr., Mrs., Monsieur, Madame, are **господинъ** (plural **господá**), and **госпожá**. The use of them is very much more restricted than in other European languages.

**Господинъ, госпожá**, are only employed when the relationship is distant. Thus, the master of a factory would address his equal (whose name we will suppose to be **Васілій Пáвловичъ Перепѣлкинъ**) as **Васілій**

---

\* The patronymic is accented like the name from which it is derived; where monosyllabic names throw the accent on to terminations, or the termination can be accented, the accent is similarly thrown forward in the derivative. E.g. **Ѳомá, Ѳомичъ**; **Кузьмá, Кузьмичъ**; **Сáвва, Сáввичъ**; **Пѣтръ (Петрá), Пѣтровичъ**; **Алекса́ндръ (Алекса́ндра), Алекса́ндровичъ**. A few feminines are formed in **-ична**, e.g. **Ѳоминиш(ч)на, Сáввиш(ч)на, Кузьминиш(ч)на**; **Лукá, Лукиниш(ч)на**; **Никѣита, Никѣитиш(ч)на**.



Пáвловичъ; an underling (such as a clerk) as Господи́нъ Перепѣлкинъ; a mere workman or lower servant as Васи́лий. He would not address him as Перепѣлкинъ, unless he were a superior giving a direct command to an inferior; e.g. the master speaking to a foreman.

Again, if a doctor is introduced, he will commonly be addressed as до́кторъ (as we say "colonel" or "lieutenant" or "doctor"), unless he is of higher standing, when the polite form would be господи́нъ до́кторъ.

When comparative strangers address one another, they will say господи́нъ Ба́шкинъ; as they approach intimacy, they will use the form Илья́ Кузьми́чъ; and as close friends, Ильи́; but seldom Ба́шкинъ, as in other languages, the surname.

## II. *Between masters and servants.*

The servant speaks of his master and mistress, and their daughter, respectively as ба́ринъ, ба́рыня, ба́рышня.

In shops, restaurants, etc., an attendant calls the customers or masters су́дарь, су́дарыня (an abbreviation of госуда́рь, госуда́рыня), or adds an enclitic съ; these phrases are equivalent to the English "sir" and "madam."

e.g. Слúшаю-сь. I hear you, sir.

Да-сь. Yes, sir.

Что прика́жете-сь? What are your orders, sir?

This съ is supposed to be an abbreviation of су́дарь.

The master and mistress (*patron* and *patronne*) of a business house are хозяи́нъ, хозя́ева.

III. At meetings the company is collectively addressed as **Мілостивыя госудáрыни и мілостивые\*** госудáри, or more simply as **господá**, equivalent to "Ladies and Gentlemen."

#### IV. *Titles.*

Majesty is **Велічество**. The monarch is called **госудáрь** (госудáрыня), and these words are written with a capital, unless the reference is historical to a deceased monarch.

e.g. **Егó Имперáторское Велічество Госудáрь.**

**Ея Имперáтрица Велічество Госудáрыня.**

**Царь, царіца**, are used in ordinary speech.

The Royal family has the title **Высóчество**.

e.g. **Егó Имперáторское Высóчество Наслѣдникъ.**

**Цесарéвичъ Алексѣй Николаевичъ.**

His Imperial Highness the heir Tsesarévich Alexis.

Otherwise the forms are **царéвичъ, царевна**.

Grand Dukes (who belong to the Royal Family more distantly) are styled **Велікій Князь**.

e.g. **Егó Имперáторское Высóчество Велікій Князь Николаій Николаевичъ.**

**Ея Имперáторское Высóчество Велікая Княгіня Елизавета Николаевна.**

The daughters of a **князь** are styled **княжна**.

---

\* A rendering of the German "gnädige Herrschaften."

Dukes (князь) have the title сіятельство (brilliance).

e.g. Его Сіятельство Князь Пáвель Петро́вичъ Долго-  
ру́кій.

Earls and barons are also styled сіятельство.

e.g. Его Сіятельство Графъ (графі́ня) . . .

The civil ranks are as follows:—

Его́ Высокoпревосході́тельство (excellency), for a  
Дѣ́йстві́тельный Тайный Совѣ́тникъ (something  
like a Privy Councillor; also called Стáтскій  
Генерáль).

Его́ Превосході́тельство, for a Тайный Совѣ́тникъ.

Его́ Высокoрoді́е, for a Стáтскій Совѣ́тникъ.

Его́ Высокoблагорoді́е, for a Коллѣ́жскій Секретáрь,  
and for the lower ranks.

Его́ Благорoді́е.

In the army, ranks from a порúчикъ (lieutenant) to  
a штабъ-капитáнъ (captain) are styled Его́ Благорoді́е;  
from a капитáнъ to полкóвникъ, Его́ Высокo-благорoді́е;  
from a general of infantry to a general-lieutenant,  
Его́ Превосході́тельство.

In the Church, the regular clergy are styled Высокo-  
преподóбі́е, преподóбі́е, высокoпреосвященство, преосвя-  
щенство, according to rank; the lower orders being  
called благословéніе.

Persons not titled are addressed господі́нъ, госпожá,  
followed by the full name; often the господі́нъ,  
госпожá, is omitted on envelopes.

As stated in § 67, Russian concord follows sense and not form, unlike French and German.

e.g. Его Превосходительство изволили прибыть.  
His Excellency has arrived (deigned to arrive)

Ея Императорское Величество Государыня  
говорила что . . .

Her Imperial Majesty the Empress said . . .

*Contrast*—“*Sa Majesté le roi est arrivée.*” “*Que désire-t-elle?*” In Russian, что хотите.

These titles must be used in combination with the name of the office.

e.g. Его Высокопревосходительству Господину  
Министру Народнаго Просвѣщенія (Путей  
сообщеній).

To his Excellency the Minister of Public  
Education (communications).

In a private letter—

Его Высокопревосходительству Аркадію Михай-  
ловичу Ра́зину.

To his Excellency Arkádi Mikhailovič Rázin.

V. In addressing letters the full titles are inserted, in the dative, with or without къ.

e.g. In a private letter, Его Превосходительству  
(or Высокопревосходительству) Николаю  
Семёновичу Пугачёву.

If official, Его Высокопревосходительству  
Господину Начальнику Либа́во-Ро́менской  
желѣзной доро́ги, Николаю Семёновичу  
Пугачёву.

To his Excellency the director of the Libáva-  
Romeny railway. . . .

Where there is no title, any of these three forms are applicable:—

Егó Высокóродію Николáю Петрóвичу госпóдину Пивовáрову.

Николáю Петрóвичу Пивовáрову.

Or simply, Николáю Петрóвичу госпóдину Пивовáрову.

Next follows the name of the street and number, then the house, lastly the town and country.

e.g. Егó Сіятельству Князю Семёну Аркадіевичу  
Долгорúкому,  
Мѣховáя ўлица, No. 18,  
Домъ Бáшкина,  
въ Москвѣ.

Letters addressed abroad are marked: за границю, beyond the frontier.

The letter is usually headed with some honorific adjective.

e.g. When very formal, Мíлостивая Госудáрыня, Госпóжá Шáхматова; when less stiff, Мíлостивая Мáрья Ефíмовна; if friendly, Многоуважáемая Мáрья Ефíмовна; if intimate, Дорогáя or Любéзная Мáрья Ефíмовна.

Thus the English equivalent of Многоуважáемая Мáрья Ефíмовна, would in this case be "Dear Mrs. or Miss Šákhmatov."

The conclusion of the letter would be as follows:—

Съ совершеннымъ почтѣніемъ.

Готóвый къ услúгамъ.

(or, informally) Вашъ

Васілій Пивовáровъ.



## § 84. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

As in English, sentences beginning with interrogative pronouns and adverbs are interrogative in themselves.

e.g. **Когда** приб́удете ?  
When will you arrive ?

Other interrogative sentences are distinguished by the enclitic particle **ли**, which is appended to the emphatic word of the sentence. The personal pronoun, or subject, may or may not follow the verb.

e.g. **Не см́ожете-ли** вы з́автра пригото́вить мои́ сапоги́ ?  
Will you not be able to get my boots ready to-morrow ?

**Скóро-ли** приб́удемъ къ б́ерегу ?  
Shall we soon reach shore ?

There is another interrogative adverb, **разв́ѣ**, which conveys an ironic sense.

e.g. **Разв́ѣ н́ужно** чтóбы насъ подсл́ушивали ?  
Is it necessary they should overhear us ?

## § 85. NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

Russian has two particles of negation, **не** and **ни**. A third one, **нѣтъ**, is considered to be an abbreviation of **не есть**, and is used for "No" as a reply.

**ни** is used:—

(1) To express neither—nor—.

e.g. **Ни я ни мой** от́ецъ не могли́ скрыть такую́ трево́гу.  
Neither I nor my father could conceal such a trouble.

**ни ни** *always requires the verb negatived with не.*

(2) In composition with negative pronouns [v. § 40 (1), § 41, VII. and § 82, V.]. Such pronouns, e.g. *никако́й*, also need a verb negated with *не*.

(3) With the indefinite pronouns [v. § 82, III.].

*не* is used:—

(1) To express the negation of a verb in all tenses and moods.

e.g. *Не трогай меня́, когда́ я шью.*

Do not touch me, when I am sewing.

(2) With adjectives to negative their meaning. Notice in this connection that Russian possesses no such distinction of negatives as English or Latin; e.g. between non-essential, unessential, illogical, non-logical, insensate, nonsensical (the distinction generally being that an adjective negated with “un-” or “in-” implies the absence of the positive qualities; whereas the non-compound excludes the compatibility of that quality with some other object).

Such a distinction must be otherwise expressed.

e.g. Your statement is unreasonable.

*Твоё объяснѣніе неразу́мно.*

Caterpillars are irrational, non-rational beings.

*Гусеницы—это безразу́мныя существа́.*

*Неопредѣ́лѣнныя зада́чи* indefinite, undefined tasks.

*Безпредѣ́льныя простра́нства* infinite—endless—horizons.

*Observe* (as stated in § 41, VII.) that in Russian a double negative asseverates, and does not annul as in English.

e.g. *Я не встрѣ́чалъ никто́* I met no one.

An apparent exception exists, when the negatives belong to separate verbs or as stated above.

e.g. Это было встречено, какъ нѣчто такое, что должно́ было случиться, что не могло́ не случиться.

This was faced as something that must have come about, that could not not have come about (have failed of coming about).

(3) не, in combination with certain pronouns, forms negative pronouns.\*

The pronouns are кто, что, когда, куда, etc. (i.e. those on the first line § 40 (2)).

In this usage не stands for нѣтъ there is not.

e.g. Нѣчего дѣлать.  
There is nothing to do.

(but Я не дѣлалъ ничегó.  
I was doing nothing.)

Мнѣ не къ кому обратиться.  
I have no one to turn to.

Ему́ не на чёмъ основывать его́ надежды.  
He has nothing on which to build up hopes.

*The preposition is always inserted between the negative and the pronoun, as with никто́, etc.*

Observe, in the past or future tense the verb "to be" must be inserted.

e.g. Не чего́ будетъ (было) дѣлать.

Lastly, the reader is cautioned to distinguish between this use of не, as a separable negative, and нѣ the indefinite prefix; e.g. нѣкто somebody, нѣкоторый, etc. [v. § 40 (2).]

\* This use of не, formerly нѣ, is probably derived from не е there is not; е in older Slavonic being an unaccented form of есть.

## § 86. THE VERB "TO BE."

In the present tense the verb "to be" is generally omitted. In any case the forms *есмь*, *еси*, *есмы*, *есте*, are obsolete, and *суть* is only rarely found; *есть*, when necessary, replacing all the persons and numbers.

e.g. Я здоровъ I am well.

Ты негодѣй you are a scapereace.

Онѣ воры they are thieves.

Барина нѣтъ дома master is not at home.

However, the "copula" in the present sometimes must be stated.

(1) *Есть* regularly stands for "there is," "there are."

e.g. Есть на свѣтѣ худыя люди.

There are evil people in the world.

The negative of *есть* in this sense is *нѣтъ*. [v. § 85.]

(2) *Есть* and *суть* sometimes are used to assert existence.

e.g. Богъ есть: ангелы суть.

God *is*: the angels *are*.

But it is better to use the verb *существовать*.

e.g. Всегда существують нѣсколько исключеній для всякаго правила грамматки.

There are always some exceptions to every rule of grammar.

## (3) In definitions.

e.g. Прямая́ лінія́ есть́ кратчайшее́ разстоя́ніе ме́жду  
двумя́ то́чками.

A straight line is the shortest distance between  
two points.

Бо́лѣзни́ сутьъ наказáніе чело́вѣку за перво́родный́  
грѣхъ.

Diseases are man's punishment for primeval sin.

But, in all such cases it is better to substitute the  
pronoun *это*.

e.g. Лі́нія — это́ ...

Бо́лѣзни — это́ наказáніе ...

(4) When the use of the copula is essential to  
clarity *быть* is generally replaced by some exacter  
verb, such as *сидѣть*, *находиться*, *лежать*, *стоять*, *состоять*.

e.g. Мой дѣ́дя нахо́дится въ пло́хомъ состо́яніи здо́ровія.  
My uncle is in poor health.

Москв́а сто́итъ на рѣ́кѣ́ то́го же назва́нія.

Moscow lies (is) on a river of the same name.

Пра́га сто́итъ на холмѣ́ надъ рѣ́кою Влта́вою.\*

Prague is on a hill above the Moldau.

Ко́шка си́дитъ на сту́лѣ.

The cat is on the chair.

Соба́ка ле́житъ подъ сто́ломъ.

The dog is under the table.

Сту́ль сто́итъ въ дѣ́тской.

The chair is in the nursery.

Онъ состо́итъ офице́ромъ въ а́рміи.

He is an officer on service.

The omission in Russian of the present of *быть* explains the  
form of the past tense. In older Russian the perfect *ран я есмь*  
(на)писа́лъ, -а, -о, ты еси́ (на)писа́лъ, -а, -о, etc.; later the copula  
vanished. Cf. in Polish *писа́łem, писа́łam, писа́лом; писа́łeś, писа́łaś,*  
*писа́лоś, etc.; писа́ли́śmy, писа́лы́śmy, etc.*

\* От Молда́вою.



*In every other tense and mood* the verb **быть** is used, but the predicate put into the dative or instrumental, according to sense.

e.g. Онъ былъ банкиромъ (present онъ банкиръ)  
а теперъ онъ торговецъ селѣдками.

He was a banker and is now selling herrings.

Нашѣствие Татаръ было несчастьемъ для Рूसи.

The incursion of the Tatars was a misfortune to Russia.

Когда бываєте (бўдете) дома?

When are you at home as a rule?

When will you be at home?

It should, however, be observed that in the present the word **вотъ** is used like the French *voici, voilà*, or the Italian *ecco*.

e.g. Вотъ вашъ братъ который опоздалъ.

There is your brother who was late.

### § 87. THE VERB "TO HAVE."

In Russian there is no verb which can be exactly translated "to have."

The verb "to have" is replaced by **у меня есть, былъ, etc.**

e.g. У меня [есть] (было or были) три грамматки  
рўскаго языка.

I have (had) three grammars of the Russian language.

имѣть "to possess" or "own" is also used in this sense.

e.g. Съ кѣмъ имѣю честь говорить?

With whom have I the honour of speaking?

Otherwise, имѣть means "to own"; cf. имѣщество property.

e.g. У меня есть собственный домъ.

I have a house of my own.

But Имѣю собственный домъ.

I have (i.e. own as my property) a house belonging to me.

### § 88. SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has a special idiomatic use as a sort of general fatalistic future; the construction is impersonal, the logical subject and the predicate both being put in the dative.

e.g. Имъ не забыть своихъ дѣтей.

They shall not forget their children.

Такимъ образомъ никому не быть богаты.

In this fashion no one gets rich. [v. § 34 (1).]

Ну, хорошо что ты ко мнѣ зашелъ; а то не бывать тебѣ живому.

It is well for you you came to me; otherwise you would not be alive.

*Observe* the dative adjective may be in the simple or attributive form; the instrumental is also allowable; thus in the instance above, такимъ образомъ . . . богатымъ.

The infinitive *may* be used as a noun, as in English.

e.g. To fly on an aeroplane is a great pleasure.

Летѣть на аэропланѣ—это большое удовольствіе.\*

\* Observe aviator is лѣтчикъ.

But the verbal noun in *-nie* is generally substituted in the nominative, and always in the oblique cases.

e.g. To suffer is our truest experience.

Страда́нiе — на́ше са́мое исти́нное испыта́нiе.

By trying you will succeed.

Стара́нiемъ тебѣ уда́стся.

## § 89. THE USE OF GERUNDIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

### I. *The Gerundives.*

The two gerundives, present and past, can only refer to the subject\* of the sentence, and are used as indeclinable participles.

e.g. Бродя́ по у́лицѣ, я встрѣ́тилъ Ива́на Я́ков-  
ле́вича.

Whilst wandering along the street I met  
Iván Yákovleviç.

Чита́я А́нну Ка́ренину, я пла́кала.

On reading Ánne Karénina, I cried.

Запла́тивъ свои́ долги́, я почув́ствовала себѣ  
свободную́.

Having paid my debts I felt free.

### II. *The participles, present and past.*

These are used in agreement with a noun.

e.g. Въ ко́мнатѣ́ бы́ло ти́хо, то́лько шелестѣ́ли  
перевора́чиваемы́я листь́.

It was quiet in the room, only the leaves (of  
the book) rustled as they were turned over  
(present participle passive).

---

\* The historical explanation of this rule is that the "gerundives" are the shorter (predicative) form of the nom. sing. masculine of the active participles.

Передъ его расширенными глазами проходили страшные образы, вызывавшіе жалость . . .

Before his *open* eyes terrifying images passed, *provoking* pity . . .

Въ тёмную ночь они летѣли куда-то на своихъ колючихъ крыльяхъ.

In the dark of night they flew somewhere on their *sharp-pointed* wings.

Всѣ это было проявленія одной загадочной силы, желающей погубить человѣка.

All of these were aspects of some one mysterious power *that wants* to ruin mankind.

Я видѣлъ её сидящей на стулѣ.

I saw her *sitting* in a chair.

Онъ походилъ на человѣка теряющаго послѣднюю надежду и оставившаго всё въ прошломъ.

He resembled a man *who was losing* his last hope, and *had left* everything behind in the past.

Каждый годъ русская желѣзодѣлательная промышленность уменьшаетъ количество ввозимыхъ изъ Германіи товаровъ.

Every year the Russian iron industry diminishes the quantity of goods imported from Germany.

It should also be observed that the present participle passive, especially when compounded with *не*, has a secondary meaning, corresponding to the Latin *-bilis*.

e.g. **вѣдимый** visible, **двѣжимый** moveable  
**сгараемый** incendiary, **нелюбимый** unlovable

Abstracts from these are formed in **-ость**, etc.

**неотъемлемость** imprescriptibility  
**неотмѣняемость** irrevocability

The past participle passive *may* also bear this same secondary meaning, e.g. **несравненный** incomparable.

As a general rule these gerundives and participles are used much like the English forms in “-ing.”

## § 90. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

### I. *Temporal.*

There being no moods in the Russian verb, temporal conjunctions merely govern the same forms as are used in principal clauses.

There are some few independent forms, such as **когда́** when, **пока́** until; most of the conjunctions are compounds with **что**; cf. in French *quand*, but *quoique*, *bienque*, *lorsque*, etc., all formed with *que*.

**когда́** means “when” generally; **пока́** is followed by “**не**,” as in French.

e.g. **Пока́ Но́виковъ не уѣзжалъ изъ Москвѣ.**

Until Novikov left Moscow, “*jusqu’à ce que*  
 Novikov ne quittât Moscou.”

But temporal conjunctions are mostly formed with the appropriate preposition governing a case of **тогь**, **то**,



followed by *какъ* or *что*; e.g. *между тѣмъ какъ* while, *въ томъ что* exactly when, *по томъ что*, *послѣ того какъ* after, *до того какъ* until, *отъ того что* after which . . .

## II. *Causal conjunctions, etc.*

These are all formed prepositionally; e.g. *потому что* because, *для того что́бы* with the object of, *кро́мѣ того что* besides which, *послѣ того какъ* after (causal), *противъ того, что* against the fact that . . ., etc., very much like the German “wogegen,” “indem,” “nachdem,” etc.

## III. *Conditional clauses.*

The clause prefaced by “if” is called the protasis, the principal sentence is called the apodosis.

The regular method is to prefix the protasis with *если*, in common parlance *коли*.

When the past tenses are used, the particle *бы*\* may be added to the protasis, and must be added to the apodosis. *бы* is enclitic and can be abbreviated to *бъ*, e.g. *еслибъ*.

The apodosis is also frequently prefaced by the particle *то*, which stands first in the sentence, like the German “wenn . . .” “so.” This *то*, like *so*, is left untranslated in English.

---

\* *Бы* in modern Russian is a particle creating the sense of a conditional tense (“I would have,” “should be,” etc.). It is originally the 2nd and 3rd person sing. preterite of *быть* (formerly *я быхъ, ты, онъ бы*). In Old Russian the compound tense *быхъ былъ* was a regular conditional like *j'aurais été, j'eusse été*.

The tense sequence is as in English.

e.g. **Если** васъ посѣщ<sup>у</sup>, то приведу́ мою сестру.  
If I visit you, I will bring my sister.

**Если-бъ** случилась такая бѣда́, то я увѣдомилъ-  
бы васъ объ этомъ.  
If such a misfortune happened to me, I would  
acquaint you of it.

When the events stated in protasis and apodosis are both unreal, **бы** is repeated in both.

e.g. **Если-бъ** я простудился, я не могъ бы окончить  
свою́ книгу.  
If I had caught cold, I should not have been  
able to finish my book.

The infinitive may be used in either clause as stated in § 88.

e.g. **Если бы** мнѣ знать.  
If I had known.  
**Если** идти направо.  
If we are to go to the right, . . . .

The protasis may be *irregularly* introduced:—

(1) By two disjointed verbs.

e.g. Разбогатѣю, заплач<sup>у</sup>; не разбогатѣю, не заплач<sup>у</sup>.  
If I grow rich, I will pay; if I don't, I shan't.

(2) By the imperative uninflected for any person  
[v. § 91].

e.g. Знай я это раньше, я бы не напис<sup>а</sup>лъ.  
Had I known this sooner, I would not have  
written.

(3) By the infinitive [cf. § 88].

e.g. Знать бы мнѣ это раньше, я бы не осмѣлился говорить.

Had I known this sooner, I would not have dared speak.

*In all these cases бы marks unreality, an unfulfilled condition. Cf. § 93 on было.*

#### IV. Final clauses.

Final clauses relate either to purpose or effect.

##### (1) Purpose.

Where the subjects of the principal and the subordinate clause are the same, *чтобы* (sometimes *дабы*) is used with the infinitive.

e.g. Я путешествовалъ по Россіи чтобы учиться русскому языку.

I travelled about in Russia to learn Russian.  
[v. § 69, V.]

Where the subjects are different, *чтобы* (or *дабы*) generally with the past tense.

e.g. Я уѣду изъ Москвы чтобы ты осталась одна.

I will leave Moscow that you may be left alone.

##### (2) Effect—"so that," такъ что, with the present, past or future.

e.g. Орёлъ летѣлъ такъ быстро что пельзі было попасть въ него.

The eagle flew so fast that there was no chance of hitting him.

Она такъ раздражительно, что я не выдержу.  
She is so irritable that I shall not stand it.

V. *Reported Speech.*

In English reported speech goes into the tense of the principal verb, with the necessary change of person.

e.g. "He said that he was going to visit his cousin if time permitted." The remark in direct narration would be "I am going to visit my cousin, if time permits."

The same rule does not altogether apply to Russian. Russian has only one past tense, so that there is no difference corresponding to "I *have* seen," "I said I *had* seen." Further, there is no reported future tense, "was going to visit," "would visit." Consequently the above sentence in Russian would run: "Онъ сказáль что посѣтитъ своего двоюроднаго брата если у него будетъ время" (present tense in reported speech).

Or again, "He said he had seen the Tsar." His remark was "I have seen the Tsar"; however, in Russian, "I saw," "have seen," and "had seen" are all alike, увидѣль. Consequently the Russian would be: "Онъ сказáль что видѣль Царя."

Lastly, in reporting the present tense, Russian, like English, sometimes may change to the past.

e.g. He said he was writing a letter to his mother  
(I am writing . . .).

Онъ сказáль что писáль письмó къ мáтери, *or*  
*better* что пишеть.

Consequently, in reporting an action with a verb in the past, Russian does not, because it cannot, change the tense.

In reporting a speech with a future tense Russian must use the future, as it has no indirect form of expressing the future.

In reporting a speech with a verb in the present, Russian can retain the present, changing the person, *or* may use the past tense.

In reporting an imperative, the imperative must be treated like a future.

e.g. They said they would murder Cæsar (i.e. Let us murder Cæsar).

Онѣ сказали что убьѣютъ Цезаря (сказали, да убьѣмъ *or* убьѣмте Цезаря).

In reporting a question, the same changes of person and tense must be used, but the particle **ли** is affixed to the first word of the subordinate clause, unless some other interrogative word be there instead. [v. § 84.]

e.g. He asked Peter would his (Peter's) sister be going out as a nurse.

He asked Peter when his sister had lost her money.

He asked Peter whether his sister was ailing.

In direct speech—

Will your sister be going out as a nurse?

When did your sister lose her money?

Is your sister ailing?

In Russian—

Онъ спросилъ Петра, пойдѣтъ-ли его сестра въ няньки. [v. § 69, III.]

Онъ спросилъ Петра, когда его сестра потеряла ея деньги.

Онъ спросилъ Петра, не больна-ли его сестра.

In all these cases the only change is in the person, none in the tense.



Similarly—

He said “could one believe a German.”

Онъ сказа́ль, “ра́звѣ мо́жно вѣ́рить Нѣ́мцу.”

These are the usual methods of reporting speech in Russian. A few idiomatic usages must still be discussed. Three particles, *де*, *мо́ль* and *де́ска́тъ* (or *ди́ска́тъ*), and in vulgar Russian, *грю*, *гришь*, *гритъ*, *грили* (abbreviations of *говори́ю*), are used like the vulgar English, “’e sez,” to indicate a reported speech; *де*, *мо́ль*, *ди́ска́тъ* are all three abbreviations of words bearing the same meaning, “he said”; \* and are all popular in style.

These particles are used in reporting messages (where in Latin and Greek the accusative and infinitive would be employed).

e.g. Онъ говори́тъ: я мо́ль иска́ль, да знать мо́ль нѣ́ту.

He says, “I looked, but could not find out.”

Объ ита́льи́нской а́рміи отзы́вался съ презри́тельной улы́бкой, какъ о величинѣ́ да́же серьёзнаго внима́нія не заслу́живающей; мы-де еѣ хоро́шо зна́емъ. [v. § 4 (7).]

He disparaged the Italian army with a contemptuous smile, as though speaking of a power not deserving serious attention; “we know all about it.”

Вы ду́мали запуга́ть меня́, Васи́лій Ива́новичъ; во́тъ деска́тъ, я его́ пугну́.

You thought you would frighten me, Vasili Ivánovič; you thought, “I will frighten him.”

---

\* These examples are partly taken from Boyer’s *Manuel de la langue russe*.

In every case where these particles are used, the quotation or indirect narration is in the person and tense of the original; these words merely serve as spoken inverted commas.

### § 91. THE IMPERATIVE.

The imperative conjugated in full comprises the following forms:—

e.g. да играю	пусть играю	let me play
играй		play
да играетъ	пусть играетъ	let him play
да играемъ	пусть играемъ, играйте	let us play
играйте		play
да играютъ	пусть играютъ	let them play

The forms with *да* express desire; those with *пусть* permission.

The original imperative has only two forms, *играй*, *играйте*, and in Old Russian *играй* was the correct form of both the 2nd and the 3rd person singular.

The form in *и*, *и́*, *и́*, *ь* (e.g. *сохни*, *держи́*, *дѣлай*, *сядь*) is used for all numbers and persons in phrases which have no imperative meaning.

#### (1) Adverbially.

e.g. пожа́луйста	please (ста suffix)
пожа́луй*	I consent, so be it
ча́й*	(ча́ять expect) so be it
пусть or пуска́й	so be it
кажи́сь	apparently
гляди́	apparently
небо́сь	(for небо́йся do not fear) apparently
поди́	(for пойдѣ́ from пойдѣ́ти) apparently
почти́	almost

\* Probably these are abbreviated forms of *пожа́люю*, *ча́ю*.

дай with the perfect future "if I only could."

e.g. Вотъ дай унесу мѣшокъ огурцовъ, продамъ.

If I can carry off this sack of cucumbers, I will sell it.

давай with the infinitive.

e.g. Давай играть. Let us play.

The answer may be давай! Let us! = Yes, please; willingly.

(2) As a preterite.\* The form is invariable, and expresses a sudden action.

e.g. Откуда ни возьмись from out of the clouds.  
(Literally, from wherever it came.)

Съ горя да съ тоскѣ... я возьми да всё ей расскажи.

What with pity and grief I told her everything.

Чего-жъ бы я въ домѣ не зналъ? Кажись, всё знаю.

What do I not know of at home? I think I know everything.

Поставила на столъ напитки и закуски разныя, и поутру ранехонько будить и давай спрашивать.

She set various foods and drinks on the table; wakes up in the morning, and began asking [literally "and let me ask!"].

So, too, глядь he looked up, — lo! хватъ he seized; дѣрни, e.g. дѣрни меня the idea occurred to me; угоразди, e.g. угоразди меня the idea occurred to me.

---

\* This usage is in accord with the older grammar, which had a 3rd person singular preterite in this form.

(3) As a conditional, v. § 90, III. (2).

(4) One past tense, пошёлъ, is used as an imperative, equivalent to "get out." The explanation is that the older language had the full form **бУДЬ** пошёлъ (**бУДЬ** imperative of **бЫТЬ**).

e.g. Пошли вонъ, дурачки!  
Out you go, you fools!

§ 92. FURTHER ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE ASPECTS.

Russian has two future forms, perfective and imperfective.

e.g. Въ бУдущемъ годѹ бУду заниматься хѣмией.  
Next year I shall study chemistry.  
Завтра займѹсь мѹзыкой.  
To-morrow I shall be busy with my music.

*Remember бУду and стАну can never be used with a perfective infinitive.*

The perfective implies definition of object, and completion of purpose; the imperfective the duration or method of the process.

Instances:—

Лѣтомъ онъ ходилъ въ пальто (imperfective).  
In the summer he walked about in an overcoat.  
(French "paletot"; indeclinable in Russian.)

Онъ нерѣдко хаживалъ въ отцовскій домъ.  
He often went to his father's house.  
(The iterative, expressing discontinuous frequent action.)

Тотъ, котóрый прохáживается о́коло э́того дóма  
отъ десяти́ часóвъ до полúдня назывáется  
Никíтиннымъ.

The man who saunters round this house from  
10 to 12 a.m. is called Nikítin.

Онъ шёлъ въ Москвú he was going to Moscow.

Онъ пошёлъ на вокзáль.

He went to the railway station (perfective  
and definitive).

Я видáль вíды на своёмъ вѣкú!

I have seen wonderful things in my life!  
(imperfective; general).

Я увидáль Áнну на бáшнѣ.

I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (per-  
fective).

Я увидѣль въ гостíнницѣ одногó знакóмаго.

I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.

(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Тáмъ-же видѣль много инострáнцевъ.

I also saw many foreigners there.

(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the "aspects" are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the "aspects."

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as шептáть or выдирáть. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an "abstract" and "concrete" aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III.



SCHEME OF A RUSSIAN VERB WITH FULL ASPECTS  
ARRANGED AS TENSES AND MOODS.

*Present.*

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выдира́ть	шепта́ть
Verbal noun :	выдира́ние	шепта́ние
Part. indecl. act. :	выдира́я	шепча́
Part. decl. active :	выдира́ющій	шепча́ющій
Part. passive :	выдира́емый	шепча́емый
Indicative :	выдира́ю, -ешь, -ють	шепчу́, шепчутъ
Imperative :	выдира́й	шепчи́

*Imperfect.*

Indicative :	выдира́лъ	шепта́лъ
Part. indecl. act. :	выдира́въ, -áвши	шепта́въ, -áвши
Part. decl. active :	выдира́вший	шепта́вший

*Imperfect iterative.*

Indicative :	Same as	шептыва́лъ
Part. indecl. act. :	Imperfect	шептыва́въ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	throughout,	шептыва́вший

*Perfect active.*

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	вѣдрать	
Verbal noun :	вѣдраніе*	Same as
Part. indeclin. :	вѣдравъ, -авши	Aorist
Part. declinable :	вѣдравши	throughout.
Indicative :	вѣдраль	
Imperative :	вѣдри	

*Perfect.*

Part. passive :	{ вѣдранный } { выдиранный }	шептанный
-----------------	---------------------------------	-----------

*Aorist.*

Infinitive :	вѣдернуть	шепнуть
Verbal noun :	вѣдернугіе*	шепнугіе*
Part. indecl. :	вѣдернувъ, -увши	шепнувъ, -увши
Part. declinable :	вѣдернувшій	шепнувшій
Part. passive :	вѣдернутый	шепнутый
Imperative :	вѣдри	шепни

*Future.*

Continuous :	бѣду вѣдирать	бѣду шептáть
Iterative :	„ „	бѣду шептывать*
Perfective :	вѣдру, -ѣшь, -ѣть	Same as Aoristic.
Aoristic :	вѣдерну, -ешь, -уть	шепну́, -ѣшь, -ѣть

*Conditionals* can be formed from any *past* tense by adding the particle бы.

\* Seldom used.

## § 93. AUXILIARY PARTICLES.

The Russian verb has only one past tense, and one present. It has been explained how the aspects supplement the tense system, the imperfective supplying an imperfect tense [v. § 42 (2) (i) and (ii), § 59, § 90, III., and § 92]; the perfective a past tense of completion, whether preterite perfect or pluperfect, and a determinate future; the iterative a tense to express frequency of action; and the abstract aspect the power as contrasted with the act. Further, the particle бы partially replaces the subjunctive mood.

There are other particles and auxiliaries used, e.g. пусть, да, дай, давай [v. § 91], principally with the imperative; and the use of some others, e.g. давно, было, бывало, стану, буду, будто, только, что, is important.

(1) давно (давный in the past) or уже (already) is used to express the pluperfect.

e.g. Онъ давно искалъ дочку.

He had long been searching for his daughter  
(imperfective).

Ты уже пригото́вилъ обѣдъ.

You had prepared dinner (perfective).

(2) буду, as has been seen [§ 92], expresses the imperfective future [also v. § 58].

(3) стану also expresses the imperfective future, but has a remoter meaning, like the English "I am going to . . ." or the French "je vais . . ."

e.g. Стану собирать мои вещи въ чемоданъ.

I am going to pack my things in the  
portmanteau.

(4) *бўдто* or *какъ бўдто* means "as though."

e.g. Онъ всталъ какъ бўдто что́бы уходить.

He got up as though he were going out.

Онъ улыбу́лся какъ бўдто его́ братъ пошутилъ.

He smiled as though his brother had made a  
joke

(5) *то́лько что* means "just."

e.g. Онъ то́лько что похоронилъ своего́ отца́ какъ  
померла́ и мать.

He had just buried his father, when his  
mother died.

(6) *бывало́* with the past tense adds a meaning of  
"he used to do," of a continuous practice.

e.g. Я бывало́ посѣщаль́ эту семью́.

I used to visit this family.

(7) *хотя́* (or *хоть*) is used for "though"; in combination with *бы* and a past tense, *бъ* when the sense imports unreality.

e.g. Хотя́ ты былъ хўденькїй, на́до было́ постараться́.

Though you were ill, you should have tried.

Хотя́ я бўду въ Москвѣ́, по миѣ́ нельзя́ бўдетъ  
повидатьъ ва́шихъ роди́телей.

Though I shall be at Moscow, I shall not be  
able to see your parents.

Хотя́-бъ я былъ са́мымъ си́льнѣйшимъ на свѣтѣ́,  
бѣдныхъ я-бъ не угнеталъ́.

Even if I were the most powerful man on  
earth, I would not oppress the poor.

(8) **было** with the imperfective or perfective past signifies that the action contemplated, in the clause into which **было** is inserted, was never completed: as something—in the following sentence—intervened.

e.g. Я дѣлалъ было пригото́вленія что́бы пригласи́ть васъ къ себѣ́ въ го́сти, когд́а мен́я вы́звали изъ Лондо́на.

I was getting ready to ask you to a party, but was summoned away from London.

Я дочита́лъ ва́ше сочи́неніе и уложи́лъ было́ для по́чты, когд́а непри́тели сожгли́ мой до́мъ.

I had finished reading your composition, and had packed it up to post, but the enemy burned my house.

(9) The future perfect (I shall have . . .) cannot be expressed in Russian by any one corresponding tense.

e.g. Когд́а я бу́ду впло́нѣ́ удовле́творѣ́нъ, мен́я уже́ не бу́детъ у живы́хъ.

When I shall have been satisfied completely, I shall no longer be alive.

Я побѣ́гу́ до́мой и бу́ду наза́дъ, прѣ́жде чѣ́мъ ты вста́нешь.

I shall have run home and back, before you even get up.

## § 94. THE IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.

I. Many verbs are in themselves impersonal; e.g. **ка́жется** it seems, **ока́зывается** it transpires.\*

---

\* **Каза́ться** to seem, **оказа́ть** to render, **сказа́ть** tell, **приказа́ть** order, **разсказа́ть** narrate, **указа́ть** indicate, **показа́ть** show, **отказа́ть** dismiss, refuse; all of them perfective, the imperfectives being **оказы́вать**, etc



Such verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular, as in Latin or Greek without *any* pronoun.

II. There is no one word for generality like "one," "man," "on"; either the 2nd person singular, or the 3rd person plural is used.

e.g. Говорѣть one says.

Чѣмъ болѣе стараешься, тѣмъ болѣе ошибаешься.

The more one tries, the more mistakes one makes.

III. Russian has a predilection for impersonal construction in the passive with *ся* [v. § 60], the agent or subject being put into the dative.

e.g. хочú I wish, or мнѣ хочется; видѣть I saw, мнѣ видѣлось; спать to sleep, мнѣ спалось хорошó I slept soundly; дúмаю I think, мнѣ дúмается I think; жить to live, въ Англии свободно поживается life is free in England.

As a rule the reflexive passive construction imports a remoteness or generality to the sentence, whereas the active records a precise and determinate fact.

### § 95. АПОСОПАТЕД FORMS OF SOME VERBS.

A few verbs signifying a brusque action or noise have an *invariable* form for the past tense.\*

E.g. the interjections ахъ! охъ! ухъ! эхъ! are sometimes used like parts of a verb, meaning "to cry out" ахъ, эхъ, etc.

---

\* In many cases very similar to the apocopated past of imperfectives in -нуть [v. § 50, II.], and the imperative preterites [v. § 91].

So, too, the past of inchoatives in -нуть; e.g. прыгъ jumped, стукъ knocked, and similarly бухъ bump.

e.g. Бухъ — поплыли въ водахъ глубокыхъ.

Plump — they swam in the deep waters.

Онѣ подошли къ дому и стукъ въ окно.

They approached the house and rat-ta-tap-tap on the window.

Лиса пустилась къ лѣсу и юркъ въ нору.

The fox started for the wood, and dashed into a hole.

#### § 96. THE REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Under this head a few special phrases may be discussed. It has already been stated [§ 60] what the distinction is between passives and reflexives.

e.g. Этой войной разрушились все ходячія литературныя представленія.

In this war all the current literary notions were destroyed.

Уничтожили самихъ себя оба противника (от уничтожили, perfective).

Both combatants annihilated themselves.

Where an action is done for someone at his orders French uses the exact phrase "faire . . ."; English leaves it to be understood; the Russian usage will be illustrated by the example.

e.g. The workmen built a house.

L'ouvrier bâtit une maison.

Рабочій построилъ домъ.

But I have built a country-house.

Je me suis fait bâtir une maison de campagne.

Я построилъ себѣ усадьбу.

Женá обúлась.

The woman has put her shoes on.

Elle s'est chaussée, *or* elle s'est fait chausser.

Я побрjúюсь.

I will shave [myself] or be shaved.

Я брjúюсь самъ.

I shave *myself*.

Many verbs are reflexive in Russian, where they would not be so in English.

In the first place the reflexive indicates that the object is identical with the subject.

e.g. мýться to wash (oneself), обувáться to put on shoes, etc., одѣвáться to dress (oneself), etc.

In the second place [v. § 60] it indicates the passive (as in French).

e.g. Свирѣпости продолжáются.

Les barbaries se continuent (are being continued).

Я лишíлся мáтери.

I have lost my father.

Онъ лишíлся жízни.

He has died.

Онъ лишíлъ себя жízни.

He has committed suicide.

In the third place many verbs are naturally reflexive or deponent.

e.g. гордítься чѣмъ to boast  
боítься чегó to fear

Fourthly, many verbs with the reflexive import what was in Greek the middle voice, i.e. an action directed to the purpose of or affecting the subject of the verb, though the object governed be not the subject of the sentence.

e.g. Онъ стучи́тъ въ две́рь.

He is knocking at the door.

Онъ стучи́тся въ дзве́рь.

He is knocking at the door (with some expectation concerning himself).

Во́лосы ста́рца (or у ста́рца) бѣ́лѣю́тъ.

An old man's hair goes white.

Снѣ́жныя верши́ны го́ръ бѣ́лѣю́тся въ отдале́нии.

The snow-peaks of the mountain are whitening in the distance.

Слу́шать to hear.

Слу́шаться obey.

Му́хи куса́ютъ.

Flies sting [bite].

Мо́я ко́шка куса́ется.

My cat bites (as her habit).

Признава́ть to acknowledge.

Признава́ться to admit, confess.

Я призна́лъ его́ пра́вымъ.

I acknowledged him to be right.

Я призна́лся, что я не́ былъ совсе́мъ безвѣ́нны́мъ.

I confessed I was not altogether guiltless.

## § 97. RUSSIAN RELATIONSHIPS.

In the matter of words descriptive of relationships, Russian has an extraordinary abundance of special words.

Kinship is родствó.

Degrees of relationship стéпени родствá :—

General terms об́щія назв́анія.

прéдокъ прéдки	ancestors
потóмки	descendants
рóдственникъ	kinsman
рóдственница	kinswoman
родъ (рóда)	family (genealogically)
семья́ (фамíлія)	a family

Special designations особ́ыя назв́анія :—

Lineal descent поколѣ́нiе нисходя́щее.

сынѣ	son	} поколѣ́нiя по прямой ли́нiи generations in the direct line
дочѣ	daughter	
дѣти	children	
внукъ	grandson	
внучка	granddaughter	
внучата	grandchildren [v. § 26 (5)]	
правнукъ, etc.	great grandson	

Lineal ascent поколѣ́нiе восходя́щее.

отѣць *	father
мать	mother
родители	parents
дѣдъ	grandfather
бабушка (ба́бка)	grandmother
прадѣдъ	great grandfather
прабабушка	great grandmother
прапрадѣдъ, etc.	great great grandfather
пращуръ	great great great grandfather

\* Батьюшка in familiar speech.



## Collateral relations побóчное родствó.

братъ *	brother
сестра́	sister
дѣ́дя	uncle
тѣ́тя, тѣ́тка	aunt
† стрѣ́й	uncle, paternal
† стрѣ́я	aunt, paternal
† у́й	uncle, maternal
† у́йка	aunt, maternal
† у́ещь, у́йчичь, -ечка	first cousin on father's side
† стрѣ́йчичь, -ечка	first cousin, maternal side
племя́нникъ, -ица	nephew, niece
братáвичь, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by brother
сестри́чь, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by sister
дво́юродный братъ (сестра́)	first cousin §
тро́юродный братъ	second cousin, and so on
дво́юродный племя́н- никъ	first cousin once removed in second generation downwards

Similarly—

тро́юродная ба́бушка	great aunt
тро́юродный дѣ́дъ	great uncle

These words for relationship are, however, seldom used beyond the third generation; in ordinary language a third cousin would be родственникъ въ четвёртомъ колѣнѣ, a kinsman in the fourth generation.

\* Used colloquially to express friendly connection.

† All of these are obsolete or nearly so.

‡ Disused now.

§ I.e. a brother in the second generation.

## Relations by marriage родствó по бра́ку (сво́йствó\*).

	<i>From the husband's side.</i>	<i>From the wife's side.</i>
Father-in-law	тесть	свёкорь
Mother-in-law	тёща	свекрóвь
Brother-in-law	шúринь <i>or</i> зять	дéверь
	[v. § 24 (2)]	
Sister-in-law	сво́йченица, <i>or</i> свесть, <i>or</i> невёстка	золóвка
Son-in-law	зять	зять
Daughter-in-law	сноха́ <i>or</i> невёстка	сно́ха <i>or</i> невёстка
Sister-in-law's husband	сво́йкъ	золóвкинъ мужъ
Wife of brother-in-law	ятровъ†	ятровъ†

I.e. my sister's husband is зять; my brother's wife невёстка; but my wife's sister is свесть *or* сво́йченица, and her husband сво́йкъ; my husband's sister золóвка. In English "brother-in-law," "sister-in-law," leave all these relationships indeterminable.

Other terms to be noted are:—

óтчимъ	step-father
ма́чеха	step-mother
па́сынокъ	step-son
па́дчерица	step-daughter
свóдный братъ	step-brother
свóдная сестра́	step-sister

\* But сво́йство property.

† Obsolete.

крѣстный отецъ	godfather
крѣстная мать	godmother
крѣстникъ (крѣстный сынъ)	godson
крѣстница (крѣстная дочь)	goddaughter
невѣста	bride
женіхъ	bridegroom
женáтый	married (of a man)
замúжня	married (of a woman)
бракъ	marriage
свáдьба	wedding

*Note.*—мужъ женітся на женú, *but* женá выйдётъ замужъ на когó.

Онъ выдалъ Áнну замужъ на Плью.

He gave Anne in marriage to Плуá.

Моя сестра замужемъ.

My sister is married.

Замúжество, замúжество marriage (of a woman).

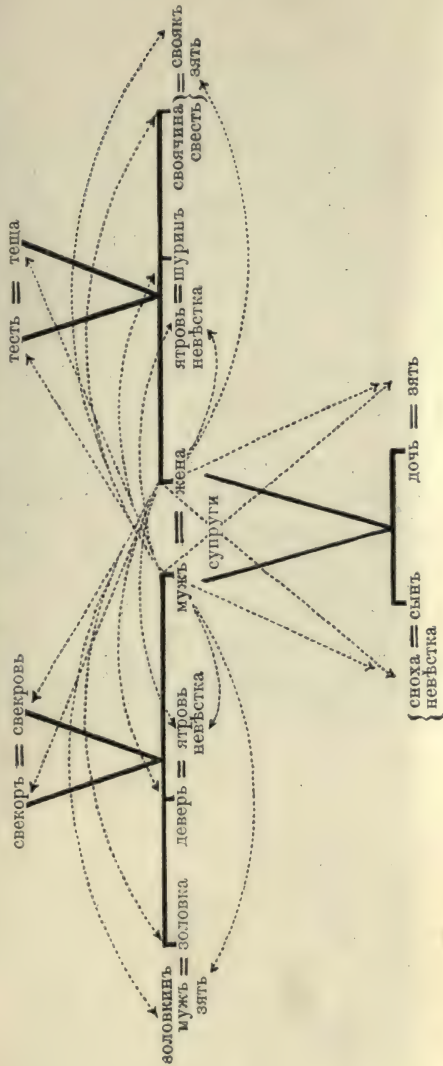
Женітьба marriage (of a man).

Relations of the half-blood are said to be *единокрóвный*; e.g. мой братъ *единокрóвный* my half-brother, and are further distinguished as *братъ по мáтери*, *сестра по отцú*, etc.



TABLE OF AFFINITIES (Таблица Свойственниковъ).

Родители по браку или по свойству.



2

Е. g. Женатые на двухъ сестёръ называются между собою свояки. Жёны двухъ братьевъ между собою ятрови. Золовка это мужнина сестра. Шурьями называются жены братья. Зять имѣеть двойное значеніе; онъ или сестринъ, или дочеринъ мужъ; такимъ-же образомъ невестка есть, или братнина жена или сынóвья.



## ETYMOLOGY.

Under this head a list of formatives of nouns, verbs, and adjectives is inserted in alphabetical order. Except for those few whose accentuation is fixed, i.e. either absolutely atonic, or else always stressed, and subject to special rules stated in the body of the grammar, the rule is that *these terminations are accented, whenever the primary form is capable of throwing its accent forward in any inflection* (e.g. столъ, столá and столáрь; but об́щій, об́ще, об́щество; товáрищъ, товáрищество); they are *unaccented, if the primary form has a fixed accent on its stem*. Thus, too, царь, царя́, царя́ца; but нача́льникъ, нача́льника, нача́льница; рабо́та, рабо́тникъ, рабо́тать, etc.

Some of the terminations are now "dead," i.e. disused, except in survivals. When this is so, a special remark is made to this effect.

The letter ь will be found prefixed to many. This indicates that in composition the previous sounds, vowels or consonants, must be modified. [v. § 5.]

## § 98. THE NOUNS.

I. Foreign terminations in common use. These are few in number and easily learnt.

-'ція, in foreign words, = "-tion"; e.g. áкция share, на́ція nation, пози́ція position. Always accented as shown.

-éръ, i.e. the French "-aire" in foreign words; e.g. акционе́ръ. The plural is in -ы.

- ёръ, i.e. the French “-eur” in foreign words;  
e.g. актёръ. The plural is in -ы.
- измъ = English “-ism.” This suffix is mostly  
accented.
- истъ = English “-ist,” used in foreign words;  
e.g. артистъ artist.
- лѳгія = English “-logy” in foreign words; e.g.  
физиѳлѳгія physiology. Accented as shown.
- торъ, -соръ, in foreign words; the Latin “tor”;  
e.g. авторъ author, профессоръ professor. The  
termination is unaccented; the plural in а  
оу ы.

## II. Disused or dead suffixes.

- ѳба (dead). Nouns denoting action, mostly  
derived from nouns; e.g. свѳдьба wedding  
(свагъ), друѳба friendship (другъ), судѳба  
judgment (судъ). These words are mostly  
paroxytone.
- ва unaccented (dead). Nouns denoting action of  
verbs; e.g. брѳтва razor, клѳтва oath. These  
words are generally paroxytone, unless derived  
from verbs.
- мя (мени) neuter (dead). Suffix of a number of  
nouns such as ѳмя name, плѳмя flame. Corre-  
sponds to Latin “-men,” always dissyllabic  
and paroxytone. [v. § 21.]
- уль (dead). A termination found in a few Tatar  
words; e.g. есауль captain, карауль sentry.
- ѳя accented, masc. second declension (dead).  
Names of agents; e.g. судѳя judge.

## III. Patronymics.

-ичъ, in patronymics ; feminine -ична. [v. § 83, I.]

-овичъ, -евичъ, in patronymics ; feminine -овна,  
-евна. [v. § 83, I.]

-овъ, -евъ, in patronymics ; feminine -ова, -ева.  
[v. § 83, I.]

## IV. Termination to denote the female.

-а ; e.g. раба́ (рабъ) slave.

-ева ; e.g. король king, королева.

-ица, forming feminines and nouns from verbs ;  
e.g. висѣлица gallows, племянница niece.

-ша (never accented), denotes the wife of an official ;  
e.g. фельдъегерша the wife of a state messenger,  
докторша the doctor's wife.

-ыня, -иня, feminine formation ; e.g. героиня  
heroine, княгиня countess, богиня goddess,  
сударыня, ба́рыня mistress.

## V. Abstract nouns.

-знь fem. (dead), forms abstracts ; e.g. болѣзнь  
illness.

-изна (dead), forms abstracts ; e.g. отчизна father-  
land, новизна́ novelty.

-ина, abstracts from adjectives ; e.g. глубина́ depth,  
година́ time.

-ѣвѣ, -иня, forms abstracts from adjectives ; e.g.  
горды́ня pride.

- ie (unaccented), forms abstracts from adjectives ;  
e.g. *весéлье* mirth.
- ость, -есть (never accented), forms abstract nouns  
of the third declension from adjectives,  
and retains accent of the adjective, unless it  
is oxytone ; e.g. *скóрость*, *скóрый* quick ;  
*двѣжимость*, *двѣжимый* moveable ; *на́гость*,  
*нагóй* naked ; *свѣ́жесть*, *свѣ́жий* freshness.
- та́ forms abstract nouns from adjectives ; e.g.  
*быстротá* speed, *красотá* beauty. Almost  
always accented as shown.
- щина (never accented), forms abstract nouns from  
nouns, descriptive of a state of affairs ;  
e.g. *Облóмовщина* Oblómovism (*Oblómov*, the  
hero of a novel by *Гончарóв*) ; *пугачёвщина*,  
the state of rebellion induced by the rebel  
*Пугаçóв* ; *Толстóвщина*, Tolstoyan life.
- ство forms abstracts from adjectives and nouns.  
One of the commonest terminations ; e.g.  
*лѣ́карство* medicine, *товáрищество* society,  
*воровствó* thieving.

## VI. Verbal nouns.

- и́ровка forms nouns of action from verbs in  
-и́ровать ; e.g. *группи́ровка* the grouping,  
*марши́ровка* the marching. Always thus  
accented.
- ние (seldom accented), forming verbal nouns.  
[v. § 42 (2) (i).] Note, however, -нѣ́ (*вранѣ́*,  
*дранѣ́*).
- тѣ (very seldom accented), verbal noun. [v. § 49, II.]

## VII. The agent or implement.

-акъ, -якъ, an agent ; e.g. батра́къ workman, вожа́къ a leader. The accent is thrown forward in all the terminations. Always oxytone. [cf. § 25, I.]

-арь, -ярь, an agent, derives nouns from nouns ; e.g. столя́рь joiner, боча́рь cooper. The plural is in -а́.

-арь, an agent ; e.g. зна́харь magician, понама́рь sexton.

-ецъ, agent or implement ; e.g. при́емецъ a receiver, ва́лецъ a roller, бо́рець a wrestler.

-икъ, an agent. The nominative is accented according to the noun from which the word is derived, when the word is oxytone the accent is thrown forward in the oblique cases ; e.g. алхи́микъ alchemist, разска́зчикъ narrator, ямщи́къ coachman.

-ка (unaccented), an implement ; e.g. винто́вка a rifle, вóзка carrying.

-никъ, an agent, derived from adjectives and nouns, *v.* -икъ ; e.g. алты́нникъ a miser, бары́шникъ a jobber, возни́къ a draught horse. Feminine -ница. When -икъ is accented it throws the accent forward on to all the terminations.

-тель, an agent, forms nouns from verbs ; e.g. учи́тель teacher, писа́тель writer. The termination is never accented, the accentuation follows the infinitive. Sometimes the words have a secondary meaning, e.g. указа́тель index.



-у́нь fem., -у́нья (accented), depreciatory, agent from a verb; e.g. болту́нь, -у́нья chatterbox, бѣгу́нь runaway.

-чикъ, -щикъ, an agent; e.g. буфѣтчикъ a butler, ямщи́къ a coachman, ва́льщикъ a paper-hanger.

### VIII. Diminutives.\*

#### (1) Masculine nouns of first declension.

-ёкъ, -екъ, diminutive suffix for masculines; e.g. кружо́къ circle, кругъ.

-я (never accented), forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. Пѣтя (Петръ), Ко́ля (Никола́й), Серёжа (Серге́й).

-о́чекъ, -и́чекъ, diminutive denoting affection for masculine nouns; e.g. дружо́чекъ (другъ), кружо́чекъ (кругъ).

-и́шко (masc. gen. -и́шка, etc.), and -и́шка, feminine (always thus accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from masculine nouns; e.g. сели́шко (селó), вори́шка (воръ thief, pick-pocket).

#### (2) Neuter nouns of first declension.

-ько (seldom accented), forms diminutive of neuter nouns; e.g. крыльцо́, крыле́чко; *but* очко́.

-ьце, diminutive; e.g. зѣркальце mirror.

---

\* In Russian the use of diminutives and augmentatives is very common, the subtleties of meaning are difficult of translation into English, and can only be gathered by practice. It is important for the student to recognise the forms.

-ечко, -ышко, -ушко (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from neuter nouns; e.g. со́лнышко (солнце), гнѣздышко.

-ышко, -йшко, neut., and -ышка, -йшка, feminine, (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from nouns; e.g. селѣшко nasty little village, коротышка pigmy, землішка barren piece of ground, городишко ugly little town.

(3) Feminines (and masculines) of the second declension.

-ька (unaccented), diminutive of feminines; e.g. жѣнка little woman; кнѣжка little book. This same termination forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. Сашка (Александръ), Серѣжка (Сергѣй).

-енька (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from the second declension; e.g. дѹшенька (дѹшá) little soul, darling.

-ица, -ичка, forms diminutives of affection from feminine nouns; e.g. сестрица.

-очка, -ечка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from second declension; e.g. скамѣечка little stool, кáрточка visiting card.

-ушка, -юшка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from nouns of second declension; e.g. мáтушка (мáть) mother, бáтюшка (бáтя) father.

-ёнка (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives; e.g. лошадёнка nasty little horse, коровёнка nasty little cow.

-ýша, -юша, -ýшка, -юшка (always accented), forms diminutives of depreciation from nouns of the second declension; e.g. Катюша from Катя Katy, Аксёша (from Аксiнiя).

### IX. Augmentatives.

-ище (masc. and neuter), -ища (feminine), forms augmentatives from nouns; e.g. домiще a big house (masc.); дýрища a great fool (feminine); полотнiще a big piece of cloth.

In some nouns there is no augmentative sense; e.g. жилiще abode, кладбище cemetery (generally accented on the first syllable), учiлище a school. When -ище is not an augmentative it is, as a rule, unaccented.

-ино, -ина, forms augmentatives from nouns, generally depreciatory; e.g. домiна a very big house.

### X. Miscellaneous.

-анинъ, -янинъ, mostly used to denote members of nations, religions, etc. [v. § 24 (5).] Accented either oxytone or paroxytone.

-áчь, forms descriptive nouns; e.g. бородáчь a long beard, богáчь a rich man.

-éжь (accented, disused), forms nouns from verbs; e.g. падéжь case (падáть), грабёжь plunder (грабiть); in the oblique cases падежá, etc.

- ёнокъ, plural -ята, the young of animals; e.g. волченокъ, волчата wolf; галченокъ jack-daw; but щенокъ, щенята puppy; волчокъ wolf's cub. [v. § 26 (5).]
- ло, from verbs; noun describes action of verb and follows accent of the past tense in лъ; e.g. началo beginning, одѣяло blanket, вѣяло winnowing-fan, ваяло chisel.

### § 99. ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES.

- авый (dead); e.g. лукавый sly, величавый stately. Accented on termination -ав.
- ватый, a termination mainly used with adjectives denoting substance, generally accented -ватый; e.g. аляповатый clumsy, виноватый guilty, витиеватый eloquent.
- оватый, -еватый, added to adjectives, often has the sense of "-ish"; e.g. синеватый bluish, бѣловатый whitish. Always thus accented.
- витый, descriptive adjective (from nouns); e.g. грановитый faceted, даровитый talented.
- икій, adjectival suffix; e.g. великій big.
- истый, from nouns, "resemblance"; e.g. золотистый gold-coloured, глинистый clayey.
- ическій forms adjectives mostly from words derived from Greek; e.g. арифметическій arithmetical, практическій practical. Accented as shown.

- ій (unaccented), forms possessive adjectives; e.g. вороній a crow's. [v. § 35.]
- ливый forms adjectives from nouns; e.g. счастливъ happy, стыдливый shamefast.
- мый, present passive participle, equivalent to "-ble." [v. § 89, II.]
- ов-, -ев-, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts; e.g. боковой lateral, Петровъ of Peter, Алексѣевъ of Alexis, верховой upper, тисовый of yew, въковой age-long.
- окій adjectival ending, -окъ substantive; e.g. глубокий deep, знатокъ an expert, зрачокъ pupil of eye.
- онькій, -енькій, forms adjectives with diminutive meaning; e.g. маленький very small, плохонькій unwell, тихонькій silent.
- учій, -ячій, former pres. part. act., now adjectival; e.g. могучій powerful, горячій hot, зыбучій vacillating. [v. § 44.]
- чатый, forming descriptive adjectives; e.g. колѣнчатый knotted, зубчатый notched. Accentuation follows that of principal noun.
- чивъ, forming adjectives; e.g. задумчивый thoughtful, говорчивый talkative. The termination is unaccented.
- шний, adjectival from nouns; e.g. домашній domestic, вчерашній yesterday's, теперешній of the present time.



-скій, -ской, forms adjectives of all sorts. There is no shortened predicative form. The accentuation is that of the noun from which the adjective is derived.

A few words accent -ско́й; e.g. мужско́й male, людско́й public, городско́й civic.

-ьный, -ьной, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts; e.g. больно́й ill, государственный of the State, ва́жный important.

-инь, forms possessive adjectives in the second declension; e.g. дѣдинь the uncle's. [v. § 34 (2).]

-ѣйшій, -айшій, -ѣе, comparatives. [v. § 37.]

-янный, -яно́й, adjectives of substance; e.g. водяно́й watery, деревя́нный wooden, ма́сляный buttery.

### § 100. VERBAL FORMATIONS.

-и́ровать (third conjugation), used mainly in foreign words; e.g. атрофи́ровать to atrophy. [v. § 53 (3).]

-и́ть (fourth conjugation), forms transitive verbs; e.g. ста́рить to make old, бѣси́ть to drive frantic. [v. § 59, V.]

-ну́ть, verbs of second conjugation. [v. § 50.]

-ыва́ть, -ива́ть, iterative verbs. [v. § 59, I. (4).]

-ѣ́ть (third conjugation), inceptive verbs; e.g. алы́ть to grow red, красне́ть to blush. [v. § 53 (2).]

With roots ending in ч, ш, щ, the termination is -а́ть, v. § 55, II.

LONDON :

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

①









UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

Five dollars per day on first day overdue  
Two dollars per fourth day overdue  
One dollar per seventh day overdue

OV 6 1947

25Apr'50CA

27Apr'51LU

14Jan'54S

90Oct'55BC

SEP 2 5 1955 LU

JUN 2 2 1956 LU

25Feb'58JN

REC'D LD

JUN 1 9 1958

FEB 25 1958

25Jul58BF

5Apr'55MC

JUN 1 4 1955 LU

IN STACKS

JUL 11 1958

3Nov'55KC

REC'D LD

JUL 29 1958

DISCIRC FEB 08 '94

26Oct'58 PY

REC'D LD

OCT 14 1958

13Jul'59MW

REC'D LD

JUL 6 1959  
8Apr'60


REC'D LD

MAY 28 1959

yB 60312



U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C043104725

344623 835  
M199

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

10.5

$$\begin{array}{r} 23.4 \\ 25 \overline{) 250} \\ \underline{250} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 150 \\ 25 \overline{) 250} \\ \underline{250} \\ 0 \end{array}$$



